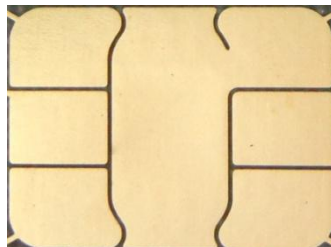

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## Security Target




## UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM




	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
			<small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>	
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## Table of Contents


<b>1</b>	<b>ST INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	ST REFERENCE	7
1.2	TOE REFERENCE	8
1.3	TOE OVERVIEW	8
1.3.1	TOE Type	8
1.3.2	TOE usage	9
1.3.3	TOE Boundaries	10
1.3.4	TOE Description	11
1.3.5	TOE Life Cycle	14
1.3.6	TOE Environment	16
1.3.6.1	TOE Development Environment & Roles	16
1.3.6.2	TOE Manufacturing Environment	17
1.3.6.3	TOE User Environment	17
1.3.7	Actors of the TOE	18
1.3.8	TOE Security Features	18
1.3.8.1	Security services to applications	18
1.3.8.2	Application Management	19
1.3.9	Non-TOE HW/SW/FW Available to the TOE	19
<b>2</b>	<b>CONFORMANCE CLAIMS</b>	<b>20</b>
2.1	CC CONFORMANCE CLAIMS	20
2.2	PP CONFORMANCE CLAIMS	20
2.3	CONFORMANCE RATIONALE	20
<b>3</b>	<b>SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1	ASSETS	27
3.1.1	(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile	27
3.1.1.1	Basic TOE	27
3.1.2	Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration	28
3.1.2.1	User data	28
3.1.2.2	TSF data	29
3.1.3	(U)SIM	30
3.2	USERS / SUBJECTS	30
3.2.1	(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile	30
3.2.1.1	Basic TOE	30
3.2.2	Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration	30
3.3	THREATS	30
3.3.1	(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile	30
3.3.1.1	Basic TOE	31
3.3.2	Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration	32
3.3.2.1	CONFIDENTIALITY	32
3.3.2.2	INTEGRITY	33
3.3.2.3	IDENTITY USURPATION	33
3.3.2.4	UNAUTHORIZED EXECUTION	34
3.3.2.5	DENIAL OF SERVICE	34
3.3.2.6	CARD MANAGEMENT	35
3.3.2.7	SERVICES	35
3.3.3	(U)SIM	35
3.4	ORGANISATIONAL SECURITY POLICIES	35
3.4.1	(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile	35
3.4.1.1	Basic TOE	36

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
			<small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>	
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

3.4.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	39
3.4.3	<i>(U)SIM</i>	39
3.5	ASSUMPTIONS	40
3.5.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	40
3.5.1.1	Actors	40
3.5.1.2	Secure places	42
3.5.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	42
<b>4</b>	<b>SECURITY OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>43</b>
4.1	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE TOE	43
4.1.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	43
4.1.1.1	Basic TOE	43
4.1.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	45
4.1.2.1	IDENTIFICATION	45
4.1.2.2	EXECUTION	45
4.1.2.3	SERVICES	46
4.1.2.4	OBJECT DELETION	47
4.1.2.5	APPLET MANAGEMENT	47
4.1.2.6	SCP	47
4.1.3	<i>(U)SIM</i>	48
4.2	SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT	48
4.2.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	48
4.2.1.1	Basic TOE	49
4.2.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	52
4.2.3	<i>(U)SIM</i>	52
4.3	SECURITY OBJECTIVES RATIONALE	52
4.3.1	<i>Threats</i>	52
4.3.1.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	52
4.3.1.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	54
4.3.1.3	<i>(U)SIM</i>	60
4.3.2	<i>Organisational Security Policies</i>	60
4.3.2.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	60
4.3.2.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	61
4.3.2.3	<i>(U)SIM</i>	61
4.3.3	<i>Assumptions</i>	62
4.3.3.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	62
4.3.3.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	62
4.3.4	<i>Security Objectives for the TOE</i>	62
4.3.4.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	62
4.3.5	<i>SPD and Security Objectives</i>	63
<b>5</b>	<b>EXTENDED REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>74</b>
5.1	EXTENDED FAMILIES	74
5.1.1	<i>Extended family FCS_RND - Random Number Generation</i>	74
5.1.1.1	Description	74
5.1.1.2	Extended components	74
5.1.1.3	Rationale	74
<b>6</b>	<b>SECURITY REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>75</b>
6.1	SECURITY FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS	75
6.1.1	<i>(U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile</i>	75
6.1.1.1	Basic TOE	75
6.1.2	<i>Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration</i>	87
6.1.2.1	CoreG_LC Security Functional Requirements	94


	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
			<small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>	
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

6.1.2.2	InstG Security Functional Requirements .....	113
6.1.2.3	ADELG Security Functional Requirements .....	116
6.1.2.4	RMIG Security Functional Requirements .....	120
6.1.2.5	ODELG Security Functional Requirements .....	125
6.1.2.6	CarG Security Functional Requirements .....	126
6.1.2.7	SCP .....	130
6.1.3	<i>(U)SIM .....</i>	<i>132</i>
6.1.3.1	Crypto JCAPI .....	132
6.1.3.2	SecureAPI .....	132
6.1.3.3	GemActivate .....	133
6.1.3.4	EMVUtilAPI .....	134
6.2	SECURITY ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS .....	134
6.3	SECURITY REQUIREMENTS RATIONALE .....	134
6.3.1	<i>Objectives .....</i>	<i>134</i>
6.3.1.1	Security Objectives for the TOE .....	134
6.3.2	<i>Rationale tables of Security Objectives and SFRs .....</i>	<i>141</i>
6.3.3	<i>Dependencies .....</i>	<i>152</i>
6.3.3.1	SFRs dependencies .....	152
6.3.3.2	SARs dependencies .....	159
6.3.4	<i>Rationale for the Security Assurance Requirements .....</i>	<i>161</i>
6.3.5	<i>ALC_DVS.2 Sufficiency of security measures .....</i>	<i>161</i>
6.3.6	<i>AVA_VAN.5 Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis .....</i>	<i>161</i>
<b>7</b>	<b>TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION .....</b>	<b>162</b>
7.1	TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION .....	162
7.1.1	<i>Basic TOE .....</i>	<i>162</i>
7.1.1.1	GP .....	162
7.1.1.2	JCS .....	164
7.1.1.3	SecureAPI .....	168
7.1.1.4	EMVUtil_API .....	168
7.1.1.5	GemActivate .....	168
7.1.1.6	OS .....	169
7.1.1.7	IC .....	169
7.2	SFRS AND TSS .....	171
7.2.1	<i>SFRs and TSS – Rationale .....</i>	<i>171</i>
7.2.2	<i>Association tables of SFRs and TSS .....</i>	<i>171</i>
<b>8</b>	<b>NOTICE .....</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>REFERENCES, GLOSSARY AND ABBREVIATIONS .....</b>	<b>173</b>
9.1	EXTERNAL REFERENCES .....	173
9.2	INTERNAL REFERENCES .....	175
9.3	ABBREVIATIONS .....	176
9.4	GLOSSARY .....	177

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


## Table of Figures

Figure 1: UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM card to be inserted in a mobile .....	9
Figure 2: TOE Physical Boundaries .....	10
Figure 3: TOE Logical Boundaries .....	11
Figure 4: Major TOE Items and TOE scope.....	13
Figure 5: Refined TOE Life Cycle .....	15

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

## Table of Tables

Table 1 ST References .....	7
Table 2 TOE References.....	8
Table 3 TOE components .....	11
Table 4 Refinement of SFR of PP(USIM).....	22
Table 5 Refinement of SFR of PP JCS.....	25
Table 6 Compatibility study .....	25
Table 7 List of SFR added in ST versus PP.....	26
Table 8 Threats and Security Objectives - Coverage .....	65
Table 9 Security Objectives and Threats - Coverage .....	68
Table 10 OSPs and Security Objectives - Coverage .....	69
Table 11 Security Objectives and OSPs - Coverage .....	72
Table 12 Assumptions and Security Objectives for the Operational Environment - Coverage.....	72
Table 13 Security Objectives for the Operational Environment and Assumptions - Coverage.....	73
Table 14 Security Objectives and SFRs - Coverage .....	146
Table 15 SFRs and Security Objectives .....	151
Table 16 SFRs dependencies.....	158
Table 17 SARs dependencies.....	160

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

# 1 ST Introduction

## 1.1 ST Reference


Security Target and associated evaluation are completely defined by information located in the following table.

Title:	Security Target : UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM
Reference:	D1255596
Version	1.2
Origin:	GEMALTO
ITSEF:	THALES CEACI
Certification Body:	ANSSI
Evaluation scheme:	French

**Table 1 ST References**

This Security Target describes:

- The Target of Evaluation, the TOE components, the components in the TOE environment, the product type, the TOE environment and life cycle, the limits of the TOE,
- The assets to be protected, the threats to be countered by the TOE itself during the usage of the TOE,
- The organizational security policies, and the assumptions,
- The security objectives for the TOE and its environment,
- The security functional requirements for the TOE and its IT environment,
- The TOE security assurance requirements,
- The security functions and associated rationales.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 1.2 TOE Reference

Product and TOE are completely defined by information located in the following table.

Product Name	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM
Product Reference	T1020364
Product Version	Release B
TOE name	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM platform using ST33F1M
TOE Reference	S1121881
TOE Version	Release B

**Table 2 TOE References**

This product is developed for Orange by gemalto as a dedicated customization of a generic product named Upteq m-NFC 2.0 platform.

## 1.3 TOE overview

### 1.3.1 TOE Type

The product **UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM** is (U)SIM module defined to be used inserted in plastic card body to be used mainly in a mobile or a smartphone, but can be used in any device with an interface conformant to [ISO 7816] specification. It is delivered on a reel of modules.

Then embedding in card bodies will be performed by Personalizer. At TOE usage, it will be delivered as a smartcard using an ISO form factor including a plug-in form factor as defined in [TS 102 221] or 3FF form factor.


The product **UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM** (also named m-NFC 2.0 in this document) implements the standard communication protocol (ISO 7816 T=0) and ETSI standard allowing communication between smartcard, mobile and server using OTA.

Moreover, the **UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM** implements the SWP [TS102613], a new full-duplex, high-speed transport protocol between the smart card and an interface device. Inserted in a NFC-enabled mobile phone, the M-NFC 2.0 smartcard allows communication with a terminal using the standard ISO/IEC 14443 communication protocol.

When loaded on **UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM**, payment or access control or transport or loyalty applications using SWP and NFC interfaces offer convergence between Mobile communication environment with OTA administration and convenience and security of secure contact less transaction based on smartcard.

The Target of Evaluation (TOE) is the (U)SIM Java Card platform embedded in a (U)SIM module then in card body intended to be plugged in a mobile phone or other mobile devices



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

to provide services to an end user. TOE type consistency is given in Conformance rationale in §2.3.

The Basic TOE is composed of the following bricks:

- A Java Card System according to [PP-JCS] which manages and executes applications called applets. It also provides APIs [JC-API] to develop applets on top of it, in accordance with Java Card™ specifications,
- GlobalPlatform (GP) packages, which provides a common and widely used interface to communicate with a smart card and manage applications in a secure way, in accordance with [GP] specifications,
- Platform APIs, which provides ways to specifically interact with (U)SIM applications, according to [TS131.130] specifications,
- Telecom environment including network authentication applications (not evaluated) and Telecom communication protocol.
- GemActivate application to activate services in Post-Issuance (loaded in Pre-Issuance) under issuer and Gemalto administration.


**The TOE configuration is defined using [PPUSIM] Basic Configuration protection profile, addressing products without the Smart Card Web Server (SCWS) functionality.**

### 1.3.2 TOE usage



**Figure 1: UpTeq NFC 2.0.4\_OFM card to be inserted in a mobile**

The USIM defined in the [3GPP] standards as the Universal Subscriber Identity Module is an evolution of the SIM developed to ensure compliance within UMTS networks. A Subscriber Identity Module (SIM) is a removable module to plug within GSM mobile equipment that contains the International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) which unambiguously identifies a subscriber. It also stores other subscriber-related information or applications such as SIM Toolkit, and other application (as an E-sign application). In the rest of the document, the term of (U)SIM is used to refer to SIM or USIM as there are considered in the same way regarding security.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

The primary services of the (U)SIM (when it is plugged in handset) are the user authentication by PIN capture and the SIM authentication on the MNO network, giving access to MNO services through the mobile. It also stores other subscriber-related information or applications such as SIM Toolkit applications as specified in [TS102.223] and [TS131.111].

The **UpTeq NFC 2.0.4 OFM** implements major industry standards:

- Java Card 2.2.2, (extended with specification of reset scenarios with multiple active interfaces introduced in Java Card 3.0.1),
- Global Platform 2.2.1 with UICC configuration 1.0.1,
- Full ETSI release 6,
- 3GPP Release 6.

It supports **multiple networks (2G, 3G,...)** and it implies that several Network Access Applications (NAA) working together, requiring for dynamic switching from networks (3G to 2G, 2G to 3G). Each application is designed like a plug-in.

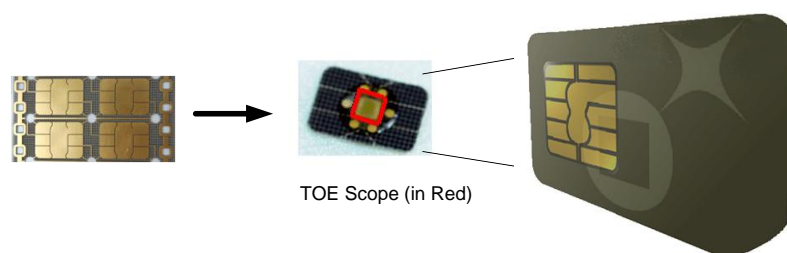
Orange customs consists in addition of Orange 3G cryptographic algorithms for network authentication and some features as Orange EF KEY Partial Update, Orange NFC Logger, Orange SIM Busy On Handler Not Available.

A dedicated set of applets can be installed in pre-issuance phase on MNO request.


### 1.3.3 TOE Boundaries

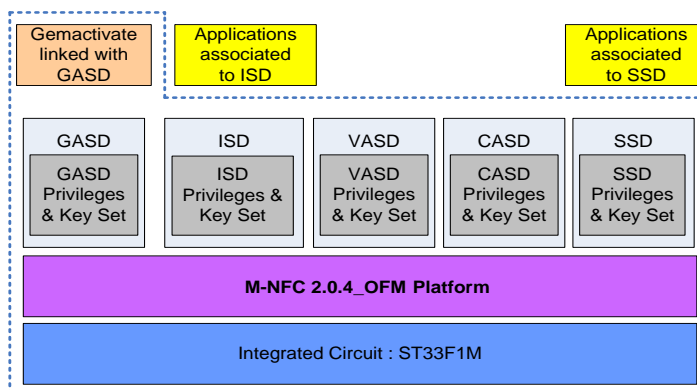
The following figures illustrate the TOE physical and logical boundaries.

The product is a module stored on a reel prior to be embedded in card body. It performs the interface between reader and the mobile and the embedded chip. The Target of Evaluation (TOE) is the Smart Card Integrated Circuit with Embedded Software in operation and in accordance to its functional specifications. Other smart card product items (such as plastic, module, bounding, printing...) are outside the scope of this evaluation.



**Figure 2: TOE Physical Boundaries**

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>



**Figure 3: TOE Logical Boundaries**

The previous figure describes the TOE logical boundaries in user phase.

[GP] defines several types of security domains used for domain and application management:

- Issuer Security Domain (ISD),
- Supplementary Security Domain (SSD),
- Controlling Authority Security Domain (CASD),

and [PP-USIM] provides also

Verification Authority Security Domain (VASD).

Gemalto provides platform service activation by OTA using GP security mechanisms associated to Gemactivate Security Domain (GASD).

M\_Perso application is available during personalization phase under control of a trusted actor in a secure environment. M\_Perso application is deleted prior delivery for TOE user phase.

### 1.3.4 TOE Description

The TOE contains the following components:

Component	Reference/Version	Supplier
M-NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform	S1105439 / Release B	Gemalto
Micro-controller ST33F1M and part of its dedicated software (DS)	Rev E	STMicroelectronics

**Table 3 TOE components**

The IC (Micro-controller ST33F1M) included in the TOE is compliant with the [PP-BSI-0035]. It includes a crypto library and a Flash loader used for software loading but inactivated for end user usage.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

The TOE is compliant with the version of the Java card™ platform specified in [JCVM301], [JCRE301] and [JCAPI301]. It includes the Java card™ Virtual Machine (JCVM), the Java card™ Runtime Environment (JCRE) and the Java card™ Application Programming Interface (JCAPI). This set is also named Java Card System.

As the product is an open platform, the isolation mechanism between applications loaded on the TOE will be studied.

The TOE is compliant with platform APIs, which provides ways to interact with (U)SIM, SIM, UICC applications, according to [TS131.130] specifications.

The TOE provides thanks to UICC API [TS102.241] the means for the applications to access the smart card file system, to subscribe in order to receive the events of the common application toolkit framework, to handle information received and to send proactive commands.

The TOE provides the (U)SIM API [TS131.130] extending the UICC API to provide features related to the 3G: it provides the means for applets to get access to the files of the (U)SIM, to register to the events defined in the USAT specification.

The BIP technology is an Over-The-Air (OTA) technology to exchange data between a (U)SIM card on a mobile phone and remote servers. It will enhance the SMS technology as a data bearer for mobile phones. It is specified in 3GPP specifications as [TS102.223], [TS102.225] and [TS131.111]. **Note that, as specified in [PP-USIM], the BIP technology does not offer any security function for the TOE.**


The TOE is compliant with the Global Platform™ standard [GP221] which provides a set of APIs and technologies to perform in secure way, the operations involved in the management of the security domains and applications hosted by the card.

Most of the GP functionalities are present within the TOE except the authorized management services as it is not supported by the Protection Profile [PP-USIM].

These operations are addressed by a set of APIs used by the applications hosted on the card in order to communicate with the external world on a standard basis. In addition, the TOE provides with a GP loader applications downloading and installing operation to an end user (which must nevertheless be authenticated).

The following GP functionalities, at least, are present within the TOE:

- Card content loading
- Extradition
- Asymmetric keys
- DAP support
- Mandated DAP support
- DAP calculation with asymmetric cryptography
- Logical channels
- SCP02 support
- SCP80 support defined by the ETSI [TS102.225] (mandatory for the ISD)
- Support of contactless services (ATQ, different implicit selection on different interfaces and channels)
- Support of extra Security Domains
- Installation of Security Domains
- Trusted Path privilege
- Delegated Management privilege
- Post-issuance personalization of Security Domain [GP-UICC]
- Application personalization [GP-UICC].

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

Note: GemActivate application is associated by default with ISD. GASD is optional and created only on MNO decision. In such case, GemActivate application can be extradited on GASD to use dedicated SCP80 secure channel. For ETSI secure scripting according to GP UICC config, by default ISD SCP80 is used, otherwise GASD or ascendant SD of GASD (e.g ISD) SCP80 is used. In both cases, GemActivate application performs applicative checks prior any required operation.

Note: The Authorized Management privilege is only supported for ISD as excluded in [PPUSIM].

The TOE includes the Telecom Environment with Network Authentication Application, Over The Air and BIP communication, File System management, and Toolkit services.

The TOE supplies EMVUTIL API and secure API in native language to provide enhanced security to applets.

The following figure describes the major items included in the TOE.

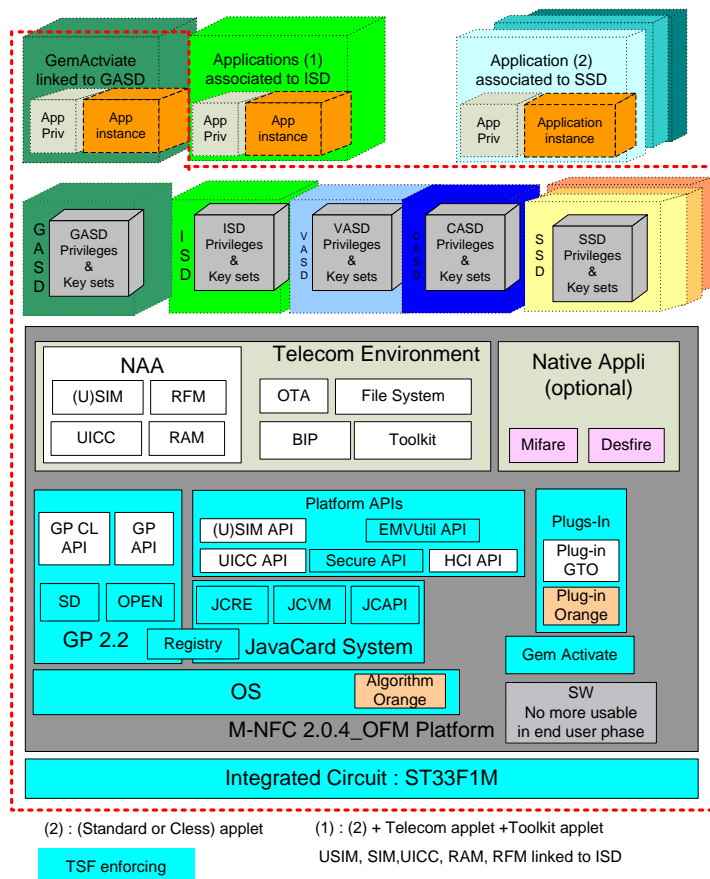



Figure 4: Major TOE Items and TOE scope

M\_PERSONO application is not drawn on previous picture as it is not present in TOE usage phase. Even if, TOE is delivered to personalizer including M\_PERSONO application, this application is used only to perform dedicated personalization operations under personalizer responsibility. This application is created at (U/SIM) composite product configuration phase and then deleted at the end of personalization phase.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


### 1.3.5 TOE Life Cycle

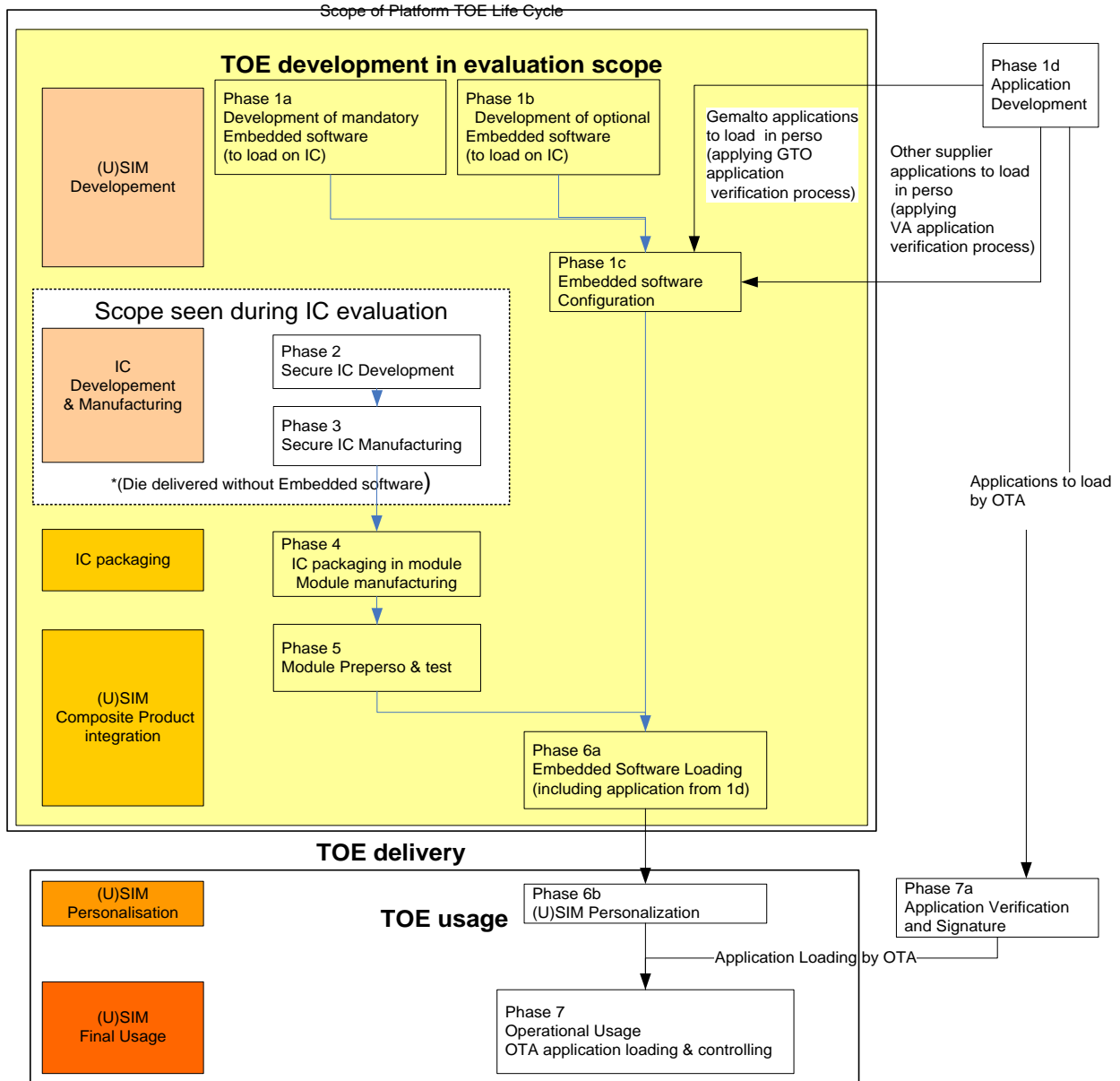
Product life cycle is described in the following picture using [PP-USIM] description refined with Gemalto specific environment due to embedded software loading in flash in phase 6.

The (U)SIM platform life cycle is composed of four stages (as defined in PP (U)SIM figure 3):

- Development (embedded software and IC separately),
- Storage, pre-personalization and test,
- Loading, Personalization and test,
- Final usage.

Refined life cycle based on [PP-BSI-0035] with Gemalto product constraints is described in the following figure.


	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> (Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>



**Figure 5: Refined TOE Life Cycle**

The following phases corresponding to the one previously described are:

- Phases 1(a, b) correspond to the development of the TOE embedded software and its configuration (1c) with applications to be loaded in phase 6.
- Phase 2, 3 and 4 correspond to IC development, manufacturing and packaging in module, respectively.
- Phase 5 concerns the composite product integration with the module and other smart card items,
- Phase 6 (a, b) is dedicated to the TOE embedded software loading and product personalization prior to TOE delivery.
- Phase 7 is the product operational phase including application loading and controlling by VA authority.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

Note: The Gemalto application will be verified using evaluated Gemalto verification process prior to be loaded in Pre-Issuance by Gemalto. In the same way, but to protect supplier intellectual property, the application provided by third party supplier must be verified and signed by verification authority prior to be loaded in Pre-Issuance by Gemalto. Gemalto will check application signature prior to load this application in Pre-Issuance.

Note: The IC used in the current life cycle does not contain any embedded software prior to phase 6. It is under protection of software security function of IC dedicated software. As generic product, the ICs are stored in personalization environment but there are not dedicated to the TOE. After loading in phase 6, IC loading service is locked and no more available after phase 6. (ref to FMT\_LIM from ST\_IC).

The TOE is delivered at the end of phase 6 as shown in previous figure. It is the operational M-NFC 2.0 product, as a personalized smart card.

As far as the EAL4+ evaluation scope is concerned, phases 1 to 6 are considered as development and manufacturing phases of the product but the TOE is the result of these phases that can consequently be seen as phases of the TOE generation.

The TOE delivery is performed at end of phase 6a; phase 6b is preparation phase and phase 7 is the operational phase of the TOE.

Out of the TOE evaluation scope, there are also the following operations linked to the TOE:

- in phase 1(d), the application development,
- in phase 6(b), the embedding in card body and personalization phase,
- in phase 7(a), the application verification and signature by verification authority prior to application loading.

### **1.3.6 TOE Environment**


Considering the TOE, the environment is defined as follows:

- Development environment corresponding to phases 1 and 2;
- Production and Personalization environments corresponding to phases 3 to 6:
- Manufacturing environment including the IC test operations, IC packaging in reel of modules, testing and pre-personalization (phases 3 to 5),
- Composite product integration (6a) corresponding to the loading by the IC loader of the OS in the flash memory,
- Personalization environment personalization and testing of the Smart Card with the user data (phase 6b).
- User environment corresponding to the card use by a subscriber on a 2G or 3G network (phase 7).

#### **1.3.6.1 TOE Development Environment & Roles**

The TOE described in this ST is developed in different places under the control of a defined administrator as indicated below:



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Phase	Administrator and Location
IC design and Dedicated Software development	STMicroelectronics Sites are defined in [ST/IC]
Embedded software Development	Gemalto (Meudon, La Ciotat, Singapore)
Embedded software Configuration	Gemalto (Gemenos, Singapore)

### 1.3.6.2 TOE Manufacturing Environment

The TOE described in this ST is produced in different places under the control of a defined administrator as indicated below:

Phase	Administrator and Location
IC manufacturing and Testing	STMicroelectronics Sites are defined in [ST/IC]
IC packaging in Module	Gemalto (Gemenos)
Composite Product integration	Gemalto (Gemenos)
Delivery to Card Personalizer	From Module Personalization site to Card Personalizer site

At the end of this phase, the TOE is delivered to Card personalizer.

### 1.3.6.3 TOE User Environment

#### TOE Personalization Environment


The TOE described in this ST is delivered to be inserted in card and personalized under the control of a defined administrator as indicated below:

Phase	Administrator and Location
Card Personalizer	Morpho (Card Personalization site)
Delivery to MNO	Morpho (From Card Personalizer site to MNO warehouse)

#### TOE Usage Environment

The TOE described in this ST is supposed to be delivered from MNO to final user under the control of the MNO.

Phase	Administrator and Location
Delivery to final user MNO	MNO Mobile Network Operator (From MNO warehouse to Final user)

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

Smart Cards are used in a wide range of applications to assure authorized conditional access. This specific product is to be used on terminals such as GSM and UMTS handsets or smart card readers. The end-user environment therefore covers an unprotected environment, thus making it difficult to avoid any abuse of the TOE. The product is prepared accordingly to mitigate such attacks in this environment.

The TOE is nevertheless under the control of the MNO administration using the OTA channel. The TOE can be blocked by GP administrative commands under administrator control.

### **1.3.7     *Actors of the TOE***

One of the characteristics of the (U)SIM Java Card platforms is that several entities are represented inside these platforms:

- The Mobile Network Operator (MNO or mobile operator), issuer of the (U)SIM Java Card platform and proprietary of the TOE. The TOE guarantees that the issuer, once authenticated, could manage the loading, instantiation or deletion of applications.
- The Application Provider (AP), entity or institution responsible for the applications and their associated services. It is a financial institution (a bank), a transport operator or a third party operator.
- The Controlling Authority (CA), entity independent from the MNO represented on the (U)SIM card and responsible for securing the keys creation and personalization of the Application Provider Security Domain (APSD) (Push and Pull personalization model of [GP-UICC]).
- The Verification Authority (VA), trusted third party represented on the (U)SIM card, acting on behalf of the MNO and responsible for the verification of applications signatures (mandated DAP) during the loading process. These applications shall be validated for the standard applications or certified for the secure ones.
- The GemActivate Administrator (usually Gemalto), represented on the (U)SIM card, by GemActivate application and associated keys, is responsible for the optional platform service activation in Post Issuance using OTA communication channel.

### **1.3.8     *TOE Security Features***


As described in [PP-USIM], the TOE can manage secure or standard applets. These applets can be loaded and instantiated onto the TOE either before card issuance or over-the-air (OTA) in post-issuance through the mobile network, without physical manipulation of the TOE and in a connected environment. Other administrative operations can also be done using OTA.

The main security feature of the TOE is the correct and secure execution of sensitive applications, in a connected environment and with the presence on the TOE of other standard applications.

#### **1.3.8.1    *Security services to applications***

The TOE offers to applications a panel of security services in order to protect application data and assets:

- Confidentiality and integrity of cryptographic keys and associated operations. Cryptographic operations are protected, including protection against observation or perturbation attacks. Confidentiality and integrity of cryptographic keys, application data are guaranteed at all time during execution of cryptographic operations.
- Confidentiality and integrity of authentication data. Authentication data are protected, including protection against observation or perturbation attacks. Confidentiality and integrity of authentication data, application data are guaranteed at all time during execution of authentication operations.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

- Confidentiality and integrity of application data among applications. Applications belonging to different contexts are isolated from each other. Application data are not accessible by a normal or abnormal execution of another standard or secure application.
- Application code execution integrity. The Java Card VM and the “applications isolation” property guarantee that the application code is operating as specified in absence of perturbations. In case of perturbation, this TOE security feature must also be valid.

### 1.3.8.2 Application Management

The TOE offers additional security services for applications management, relying on the GlobalPlatform framework:

- The MNO as Card issuer is initially the only entity authorized to manage applications (loading, instantiation, deletion) through a secure communication channel with the card, based on SMS or BIP technology. However, the MNO can grant these privileges to the AP through the delegated management functionality of GP.
- Before loading, all applications are verified by a validation laboratory for the standard applications, or by an ITSEF for the secure applications. All loaded applications are associated at load time to a Verification Authority (VA) signature (Mandated DAP) that is verified on card by the on-card representative of the VA prior to the completion of the application loading operation and prior to the instantiation of any applet defined in the loaded application.
- Application Providers personalize their applications and Security Domains (APSD) in a confidential manner. Application Providers have Security Domain keysets enabling them to be authenticated to the corresponding Security Domain and to establish a trusted channel between the TOE and an external trusted device. These Security Domains keysets are not known by the Card issuer.


Standard and Secure applets (as defined below) are loaded in different Java Card packages.

The TOE offers activation by OTA of optional services using GemActivate. Such activation is under control of GemActivate Administrator and secure channel operation is under control of MNO.

### 1.3.9 ***Non-TOE HW/SW/FW Available to the TOE***

The non TOE HW/SW/FW are those defined in [PP JCS] and [PP-USIM] as:

Byte Code verifier, Verification tool and Application DAP creation tool available to Verification authority, mobile handset, Terminal in point of sale, Remote server for administration and Trusted network and IT system for communication.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 2 Conformance claims

### 2.1 CC Conformance Claims

This Security Target has been written using CC version V3.1 release 3. This Security Target is CC part 2 extended with the FCS\_RND.1 family. All the other security requirements have been drawn from the catalogue of requirements in Part 2 [CC-2].

This Security Target is conformant with CC part 3 [CC-3].

The evaluation is performed according [CEM] and supporting documents [JIL].

The assurance requirement of this security target is **EAL4 augmented**. Augmentation results from compliance to [PP-USIM] are the selection of:

- **ALC\_DVS.2** Sufficiency of security measures,
- **AVA\_VAN.5** Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis.

### 2.2 PP Conformance claims

This Security Target has a "demonstrable" conformance to [PP-USIM] "basic configuration".

This Security Target does not claim any conformance to the Protection Profile referenced [PP-SSCD] but it supplies the items for a composite evaluation with a signature application.

The TOE includes an Integrated Circuit certified with CC EAL5 augmented with ALC\_DVS.2 and AVA\_VAN.5.

The ST33F1M Security Target [ST/IC] claims strict conformance to the Security IC Platform Protection Profile [BSI-PP-2007-0035], as required by this Protection Profile.

Refinements of [BSI-PP-2007-0035] are described in [ST/IC] and are not repeated here.

### 2.3 Conformance rationale


The differences between this Security Target and the [PP-USIM] are described here to justify the claimed conformance to the PP.

The TOE type consistency is assumed as TOE is a (U)SIM card conformant to referenced Javacard, GP and ETSI standards.

The SPD statement consistency is assumed because assets, threats, OSP and assumption defined in the ST are a copy of those supplied in the PP.

D.OPTIONAL\_PF\_SERVICE is added to allow service configuration and T.UNAUTHORIZED\_ACCESS\_TO\_SERVICE is associated to this new asset.

Some minor changes are introduced as deletion of A.DELETION replaced by T.DELETION (due to change in PP) with O.CARD\_MANAGEMENT replacing OE.CARD\_MANAGEMENT.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

There are extra OSP (OSP.RNG, OSP.JCAPI-Services, OSP.SecureAPI, OSP.EMVUtilAPI) to provide additional services to applications. The extra OSP (OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER, OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING) are provided to manage pre-issuance and the OSP (OSP.SERVICE AUDIT, OSP.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW) to manage service activation by OTA. Such extension has no impact on PP coverage.

The security objectives statement consistency is assumed because TOE objectives and objectives for environment are aligned between the ST and the PP.


There are extra TOE objectives (O.RND, O.JCAPI-Services, O.SecureAPI, O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_ACTIVATION, O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_AUDIT, O.EMVUtilAPI) to provide additional services to applications. Such extension has no impact on PP coverage.

Moreover objectives for environment in [PP-JCS] become objectives for the TOE in ST due to inclusion of IC and OS in the ST scope. It is the case for OE.SCP.IC, OE.SCP.RECOVERY, and OE.SCP.SUPPORT becoming respectively O.SCP.IC, O.SCP.RECOVERY, and O.SCP.SUPPORT.

OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER and OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW are added to manage pre-issuance loading and service activation covering the associated organizational security policies.

The list of SFRs used in the security target includes all the SFR described in the PP (U)SIM even then from implicit inclusion of PP JCS. The following table explains refinements performed between PP (U)SIM and ST.

Note: Items from PP(U)SIM are listed here.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Functional requirement	Refined in [PP-USIM]	Refined in this ST
FCO_NRO.2/SC	PP	ST
FCS_COP.1/DAP	PP	NO
FDP_ACC.1/SD	PP	NO
FDP_ACF.1/SD	PP	NO
FDP_IFC.2/SC	PP	NO
FDP_IFF.1/SC	PP	NO
FDP_ITC.2/CCM	PP	ST
FDP_ROL.1/CCM	PP	ST
FDP_UIT.1/CCM	PP	ST
FIA_UAU.1/SC	PP	NO
FIA_UAU.4/SC	PP	NO
FIA_UID.1/SC	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/SC	PP	ST
FMT_MSA.1/SD	PP	ST
FMT_MSA.3/SC	PP	ST
FMT_MSA.3/SD	PP	ST
FMT_SMF.1/SC	PP	ST
FMT_SMF.1/SD	PP	ST
FMT_SMR.1/SD	PP	ST
FPT_FLS.1/CCM	PP	NO
FTP_ITC.1/SC	PP	ST

**Table 4 Refinement of SFR of PP(USIM)**

Note: Items from PP JCS are listed here.



Reference

**D1255596**

Release

**1.2p**

(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)

Classification level

**Public**


Pages

**177**

Functional requirement	Refined in [PP-JCS]	Refined in this ST
FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL	PP	NO
FDP_ACF.1/FIREWALL	PP	NO
FDP_IFC.1/JCVM	PP	NO
FDP_IFF.1/JCVM	PP	ST
FDP_RIP.1/OBJECTS	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/JCRE	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/JCVM	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.2/FIREWALL_JCVM	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.3/FIREWALL	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.3/JCVM	PP	NO
FMT_SMF.1	PP	NO
FMT_SMR.1	PP	NO
FCS_CKM.1	PP	ST
FCS_CKM.2	PP	ST
FCS_CKM.3	PP	ST
FCS_CKM.4	PP	ST
FCS_COP.1	PP	ST
FDP_RIP.1/ABORT	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/APDU	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/bArray	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/KEYS	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/TRANSIENT	PP	NO
FDP_ROL.1/FIREWALL	PP	NO
FAU_ARP.1	PP	NO
FDP_SDI.2	PP	NO
FPR_UNO.1	PP	ST
FPT_FLS.1	PP	NO
FPT_TDC.1	PP	NO
FIA_ATD.1/AID	PP	NO
FIA_UID.2/AID	PP	NO
FIA_USB.1/AID	PP	ST
FMT_MTD.1/JCRE	PP	NO
FMT_MTD.3/JCRE	PP	NO

Functional requirement	Refined in [PP-JCS]	Refined in this ST
FDP_ITC.2/Installer	PP	NO
FMT_SMR.1/Installer	PP	NO
FPT_FLS.1/Installer	PP	NO
FPT_RCV.3/Installer	PP	ST
FDP_ACC.2/ADEL	PP	NO
FDP_ACF.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.3/ADEL	PP	NO
FMT_SMF.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FMT_SMR.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FPT_FLS.1/ADEL	PP	NO
FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI	PP	NO
FDP_ACF.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FDP_IFC.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FDP_IFF.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/EXPORT	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/REM_REFS	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.3/JCRMI	PP	NO
FMT_REV.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FMT_SMF.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI	PP	NO
FDP_RIP.1/ODEL	PP	NO
FPT_FLS.1/ODEL	PP	NO
FCO_NRO.2/CM	PP	NO
FDP_IFC.2/CM	PP	NO
FDP_IFF.1/CM	PP	ST
FDP_UIT.1/CM	PP	ST
FIA_UID.1/CM	PP	NO
FMT_MSA.1/CM	PP	ST
FMT_MSA.3/CM	PP	ST
FMT_SMF.1/CM	PP	ST
FMT_SMR.1/CM	PP	ST



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Functional requirement	Refined in [PP-JCS]	Refined in this ST
FTP_ITC.1/CM	PP	NO

**Table 5 Refinement of SFR of PP JCS**

The functional requirements are both refined in the claimed PP and in this ST. This section demonstrates the compatibility of the refinements done in both documents.

No: No refinement in PP or ST

(PP): Refinement has been made in the PP.


(ST): Additional refinement has been made in the ST.

NA: the functional requirement requires no refinement.

	Addition in ST
Assets	YES
Threats	YES
Assumptions	NO
Organizational Security Policies	YES
Security objectives for the TOE	YES
Security objectives for the operational environment	YES
Security functional requirements	YES
Security assurance requirements	NO
Security Requirements for the IT Environment	NO

**Table 6 Compatibility study**

List of SFR added in ST versus PP (U) SIM is given in the next table.


	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Functional requirement	Refined in this ST
FPT_RCV.3 /OS	YES
FPT_RCV.4 /OS	YES
FCS_COP.1/SHA2	YES
FCS_COP.1/CRC	YES
FCS_RND.1	YES
FPT_FLS.1/SecureAPI	YES
FPT_ITT.1/SecureAPI	YES
FPT_UNO.1/SecureAPI	YES
FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate	YES
FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate	YES
FMT_MOF.1/GemActivate	YES
FMT_MSA.1/GemActivate	YES
FMT_MTD.1/GemActivate	YES
FPT_ITT.1/EMVUtil_API	YES
FDP_SDI.1/EMVUtil_API	YES

**Table 7 List of SFR added in ST versus PP**

All PP requirements have been shown to be satisfied in the extended set of requirements whose completeness, consistency and soundness has been argued in the rationale sections of the present document.

The SARs statements consistency is assumed because the same assurance package is used.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### 3 Security problem definition

---

#### 3.1 Assets

##### 3.1.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

Assets are security-relevant elements to be directly protected by the TOE. Confidentiality of assets is always intended with respect to un-trusted people or software, as various parties are involved during the first stages; details are given in threats hereafter.

The assets introduced in this PP are of two kinds: specialisation of a PPJCS asset (all the threats identified in JCS apply, plus some new ones) or new asset (new threats apply).

They are divided first following the two configurations and then in two groups. The first one contains the data created by and for the user (User data) and the second one includes the data created by and for the TOE (TSF data). For each asset it is specified the kind of risks they run.

Note that assets listed in the underlying Java Card System Protection Profile are included in this Protection Profile. For a detailed description refer to [PP-JCS].

##### 3.1.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes the assets for the Basic TOE, applicable to PP09ya.

##### User Data

The following assets specialize the asset D.APP\_KEYS from [PP-JCS].

##### **D.APSD\_KEYS**

Application Provider Security Domains cryptographic keys needed to establish secure channels with the AP. These keys can be used to load and install applications on the card is the Security Domain has the appropriate privileges.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

##### **D.CASD\_KEYS**


Controlling Authority Security Domains cryptographic keys needed to establish secure channels with the CA and to decrypt confidential content for APSDs.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

##### **D.ISD\_KEYS**

Issuer Security Domain cryptographic keys needed to perform card management operations on the card.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

### **D.VASD\_KEYS**

Verification Authority Security Domain cryptographic keys needed to verify applications Mandated DAP signature.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

#### TSF Data

### **D.GP\_CODE**

The code of the GlobalPlatform framework on the card.

To be protected from unauthorized modification.

### **D.CARD\_MNGT\_DATA**

The data of the card management environment, like for instance, the identifiers, the privileges, life cycle states, the memory resource quotas of applets and security domains.

To be protected from unauthorized modification.

### **D.(U)SIM\_CODE**

The code of the (U)SIM application on the card.

To be protected from unauthorized modification.

### **D.(U)SIM\_DATA**

Private data of the (U)SIM application, like the contents of its private fields.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

## **3.1.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

Assets are security-relevant elements to be directly protected by the TOE. Confidentiality of assets is always intended with respect to un-trusted people or software, as various parties are involved during the first stages of the smart card product life-cycle; details are given in threats hereafter.


Assets may overlap, in the sense that distinct assets may refer (partially or wholly) to the same piece of information or data. For example, a piece of software may be either a piece of source code (one asset) or a piece of compiled code (another asset), and may exist in various formats at different stages of its development (digital supports, printed paper). This separation is motivated by the fact that a threat may concern one form at one stage, but be meaningless for another form at another stage.

The assets to be protected by the TOE are listed below. They are grouped according to whether it is data created by and for the user (User data) or data created by and for the TOE (TSF data). For each asset it is specified the kind of dangers that weigh on it.

### **3.1.2.1 User data**

#### **D.APP\_CODE**

The code of the applets and libraries loaded on the card.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

To be protected from unauthorized modification.

#### **D.APP\_C\_DATA**

Confidential sensitive data of the applications, like the data contained in an object, a static field of a package, a local variable of the currently executed method, or a position of the operand stack.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure.

#### **D.APP\_I\_DATA**

Integrity sensitive data of the applications, like the data contained in an object, a static field of a package, a local variable of the currently executed method, or a position of the operand stack.

To be protected from unauthorized modification.

#### **D.APP\_KEYS**

Cryptographic keys owned by the applets.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

#### **D.PIN**

Any end-user's PIN.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

#### **3.1.2.2 TSF data**

##### **D.API\_DATA**

Private data of the API, like the contents of its private fields.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

##### **D.CRYPTO**

Cryptographic data used in runtime cryptographic computations, like a seed used to generate a key.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

##### **D.JCS\_CODE**


The code of the Java Card System.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

##### **D.JCS\_DATA**

The internal runtime data areas necessary for the execution of the Java Card VM, such as, for instance, the frame stack, the program counter, the class of an object, the length allocated for an array, any pointer used to chain data-structures.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure or modification.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

## D.SEC\_DATA

The runtime security data of the Java Card RE, like, for instance, the AIDs used to identify the installed applets, the currently selected applet, the current context of execution and the owner of each object.

To be protected from unauthorized disclosure and modification.

### 3.1.3 (U)SIM

## D.OPTIONAL\_PF\_SERVICE

Platform services can be configured by addition of optional services as:

new cryptographic algorithm service available through API

new network authentication algorithm available through API

## 3.2 Users / Subjects

### 3.2.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

Subjects are active components of the TOE that (essentially) act on the behalf of users. Users of the TOE include people or institutions (like the AP, the MNO and the VA), hardware (like the CAD where the card is inserted) and software components (like the application packages installed on the card).

In this Protection Profile, relevant subjects are those listed in [PP-JCS] plus the following ones:

#### 3.2.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes the subjects for the Basic TOE, applicable to [PPUSIM]

## S.SD

A GlobalPlatform Security Domain representing on the card an off-card entity. This entity can be the Issuer, an Application Provider, the Controlling Authority or the Validation Authority.


### 3.2.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration

The subjects associated to JCS are defined in chapter introduction related to JCS security functional requirements.

## 3.3 Threats

### 3.3.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

This section introduces the threats to the assets against which specific protection within the TOE or its environment is required. Several groups of threats are distinguished according to the means used in the attack. The classification is also inspired by the components of the TOE that are supposed to counter each threat.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

The threats listed below focus only on the (U)SIM Platform. Some of them refine those already present in [PP-JCS].

All the Java Card System threats of [PP-JCS] are also relevant to this Protection Profile.

### 3.3.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes threats for the Basic TOE, applicable to [PPUSIM].

#### T.PHYSICAL

The attacker discloses or modifies the design of the TOE, its sensitive data or application code by physical (opposed to logical) tampering means. This threat includes IC failure analysis, electrical probing, unexpected tearing, and DP analysis. That also includes the modification of the runtime execution of Java Card System, GlobalPlatform or SCP or SCWS (for the SCWS TOE) software through alteration of the intended execution order of (set of) instructions through physical tampering techniques.

This threatens all the identified assets. The attacker discloses or modifies the design of the TOE, its sensitive data or application code by physical (opposed to logical) tampering means. This threat includes IC failure analysis, electrical probing, unexpected tearing, and DPA. That also includes the modification of the runtime execution of Java Card System or SCP software through alteration of the intended execution order of (set of) instructions through physical tampering techniques.

This threatens all the identified assets.

This threat refers to the point (7) of the security aspect #.SCP, and all aspects related to confidentiality and integrity of code and data.

#### T.INTEG-USER-DATA

The attacker through a malicious applet loaded on the card modifies application data, application keys or authentication data.

Directly threatened asset(s): **D.(U)SIM\_DATA** **D.ISD\_KEYS**, **D.VASD\_KEYS**, **D.APSD\_KEYS** and **D.CASD\_KEYS**.

#### T.COM\_EXPLOIT


An attacker remotely exploits the communication channel (USB, ISO-7816, NFC, BIP or SMS) established between the mobile phone and the (U)SIM card in order to modify or disclose confidential data.

All assets are threatened.

#### T.UNAUTHORIZED\_CARD\_MNGT

The attacker performs unauthorized card management operations (for instance impersonates one of the actor represented on the card) in order to take benefit of the privileges or services granted to this actor on the card such as fraudulent:

- load of a package file
- installation of a package file
- extradition of a package file or an applet
- personalization of an applet or a Security Domain

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

deletion of a package file or an applet

privileges update of an applet or a Security Domain

Directly threatened asset(s): **D.ISD\_KEYS**, **D.CASD\_KEYS**, **D.APSD\_KEYS**, **D.APP\_C\_DATA** (from [PP-JCS]), **D.APP\_I\_DATA** (from [PP-JCS]), **D.APP\_CODE** (from [PP-JCS]) and **D.CARD\_MNGT\_DATA**.

### **T.LIFE\_CYCLE**

An attacker accesses to an application outside of its expected availability range thus violating irreversible life cycle phases of the application (for instance, an attacker re-personalizes the application).

Directly threatened asset(s): **D.APP\_I\_DATA** (from [PP-JCS]), **D.APP\_C\_DATA** (from [PP-JCS]), and **D.CARD\_MNGT\_DATA**.

### **T.UNAUTHORIZED\_ACCESS**

By using the shareable object mechanism on which relies the communication between two applets, the attacker uses an applet on card to get access or to modify data from another applet that he should not have access to.

All assets are threatened.

## **3.3.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

This section introduces the threats to the assets against which specific protection within the TOE or its environment is required. Several groups of threats are distinguished according to the configuration chosen for the TOE and the means used in the attack. The classification is also inspired by the components of the TOE that are supposed to counter each threat.

### **3.3.2.1 CONFIDENTIALITY**

#### **T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA**

The attacker executes an application to disclose data belonging to another application. See #.CONFID-APPLI-DATA for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_C\_DATA, D.PIN and D.APP\_KEYS.

#### **T.CONFID-JCS-CODE**

The attacker executes an application to disclose the Java Card System code. See #.CONFID-JCS-CODE for details.


Directly threatened asset(s): D.JCS\_CODE.

#### **T.CONFID-JCS-DATA**

The attacker executes an application to disclose data belonging to the Java Card System. See #.CONFID-JCS-DATA for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.API\_DATA, D.SEC\_DATA, D.JCS\_DATA and D.CRYPTO.



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### 3.3.2.2 INTEGRITY

#### T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE

The attacker executes an application to alter (part of) its own code or another application's code. See #.INTEG-APPLI-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_CODE.

#### T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE.LOAD

The attacker modifies (part of) its own or another application code when an application package is transmitted to the card for installation. See #.INTEG-APPLI-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_CODE.

#### T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA

The attacker executes an application to alter (part of) another application's data. See #.INTEG-APPLI-DATA for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_I\_DATA, D.PIN and D.APP\_KEYS.

#### T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA.LOAD

The attacker modifies (part of) the initialization data contained in an application package when the package is transmitted to the card for installation. See #.INTEG-APPLI-DATA for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_I\_DATA and D\_APP\_KEY.

#### T.INTEG-JCS-CODE

The attacker executes an application to alter (part of) the Java Card System code. See #.INTEG-JCS-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.JCS\_CODE.

#### T.INTEG-JCS-DATA

The attacker executes an application to alter (part of) Java Card System or API data. See #.INTEG-JCS-DATA for details.


Directly threatened asset(s): D.API\_DATA, D.SEC\_DATA, D.JCS\_DATA and D.CRYPTO.

Other attacks are in general related to one of the above, and aimed at disclosing or modifying on-card information. Nevertheless, they vary greatly on the employed means and threatened assets, and are thus covered by quite different objectives in the sequel. That is why a more detailed list is given hereafter.

### 3.3.2.3 IDENTITY USURPATION

#### T.SID.1

An applet impersonates another application, or even the Java Card RE, in order to gain illegal access to some resources of the card or with respect to the end user or the terminal. See #.SID for details.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Directly threatened asset(s): D.SEC\_DATA (other assets may be jeopardized should this attack succeed, for instance, if the identity of the JCRE is usurped), D.PIN and D.APP\_KEYS.

### T.SID.2

The attacker modifies the TOE's attribution of a privileged role (e.g. default applet and currently selected applet), which allows illegal impersonation of this role. See #.SID for further details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.SEC\_DATA (any other asset may be jeopardized should this attack succeed, depending on whose identity was forged).

### 3.3.2.4 UNAUTHORIZED EXECUTION

#### T.EXE-CODE.1

An applet performs an unauthorized execution of a method. See #.EXE-JCS-CODE and #.EXE-APPLI-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_CODE.

#### T.EXE-CODE.2

An applet performs an execution of a method fragment or arbitrary data. See #.EXE-JCS-CODE and #.EXE-APPLI-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_CODE.

#### T.EXE-CODE-REMOTE

The attacker performs an unauthorized remote execution of a method from the CAD. See #.EXE-APPLI-CODE for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_CODE.

*Application note:*

This threat concerns version 2.2.x of the Java Card RMI, which allow external users (that is, other than on-card applets) to trigger the execution of code belonging to an on-card applet. On the contrary, T.EXE-CODE.1 is restricted to the applets under the TSF.

#### T.NATIVE

An applet executes a native method to bypass a TOE Security Function such as the firewall. See #.NATIVE for details.


Directly threatened asset(s): D.JCS\_DATA.

### 3.3.2.5 DENIAL OF SERVICE

#### T.RESOURCES

An attacker prevents correct operation of the Java Card System through consumption of some resources of the card: RAM or NVRAM. See #.RESOURCES for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.JCS\_DATA.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### 3.3.2.6 CARD MANAGEMENT

#### T.DELETION

The attacker deletes an applet or a package already in use on the card, or uses the deletion functions to pave the way for further attacks (putting the TOE in an insecure state). See #.DELETION for details).

Directly threatened asset(s): D.SEC\_DATA and D.APP\_CODE.

*Application note:*

Due to Protection Profile and ST definition, T.DELETION replaces A.DELETION as O.CARD\_MANAGEMENT replaces OE.CARD\_MANAGEMENT.

#### T.INSTALL

The attacker fraudulently installs post-issuance of an applet on the card. This concerns either the installation of an unverified applet or an attempt to induce a malfunction in the TOE through the installation process. See #.INSTALL for details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.SEC\_DATA (any other asset may be jeopardized should this attack succeed, depending on the virulence of the installed application).

### 3.3.2.7 SERVICES

#### T.OBJ-DELETION

The attacker keeps a reference to a garbage collected object in order to force the TOE to execute an unavailable method, to make it to crash, or to gain access to a memory containing data that is now being used by another application. See #.OBJ-DELETION for further details.

Directly threatened asset(s): D.APP\_C\_DATA, D.APP\_I\_DATA and D.APP\_KEYS.

### 3.3.3 (U)SIM

#### T.UNAUTHORIZED\_ACCESS\_TO\_SERVICE

An attacker may gain direct access to a optional platform service without authorization by bypassing access control to service activation.


## 3.4 Organisational Security Policies

### 3.4.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

This section describes the organizational security policies to be enforced with respect to the TOE environment. Rules to which both the TOE and its human environment shall comply when addressing security needs related to (U)SIM Java Card Platform.

All the OSPs listed in [PP-JCS] are relevant for this Protection Profile.

This Security Target adds the following OSPs:

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

### 3.4.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes OSPs for the Basic TOE, applicable to PP09ya.

#### Standard and secure applications policies

This Protection Profile distinguishes standard from secure applets. The former must go through a validation process before being authorized to be load on the card. The latter are certified in composition with the current TOE and keep their certification independently of the other applets loaded on the card compliant with the following OSPs. Standard and Secure applets are loaded in different Java Card packages.

#### **OSP.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION**

Secure applications must be certified according to the Common Criteria at an EAL equal to the one of the current Protection Profile.

The composition of these applications with the current PP must follow the rules defined in the document [Comp].

These applications are associated to a digital signature which will be checked by a VA during the loading into the TOE.

*Application note:*

This composition process requires that platform administrator and user guides (AGD\_ADM and AGD\_USR) are available to the secure application developer. The Evaluation report for the composition (ETR-COMP), delivered by the ITSEF which manages applications composition, must be also provided.

See [Secure APP] for more details on the evaluation/validation process.

#### **OSP.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION**

Standard applications shall be associated to a digital signature which will be checked by a VA during the loading into the TOE.


In addition to the rules stated by the Java Card specification, the validation process must enforce that standard applications:

- must follow the extra-rules stated in the user manual of the considered (U)SIM Java Card Platform,
- cannot be libraries,
- must not use RMI,
- must not use proprietary libraries which are not certified (except system libraries),
- access control to certified proprietary libraries is controlled by the secure application which has defined the library,
- must be associated to an identifier and this identifier has to be used in parameter of the function calls.

*Application note:*

GSM file system and API's STK application descriptors are other ways to share object between applications.

Identifier usage allows to easily track applications calls. This is useful if a new attack path is discovered to identify the pieces of code that could be vulnerable.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

See [Standard APP] for more details on the validation process.

### **OSP.SHARE-CONTROL**

The Shareable interface functionality should be strictly controlled for all applications to prevent transitive data flows between applets (i.e., no resharing of a shareable object with a third applet) and thus prevent access to unauthorized data.

### **OSP.AID-MANAGEMENT**

When loading an application that uses shareable object interface, to make its services available to other applications, the VA or the MNO shall verify that the AID of the application being loaded does not impersonate the AID known by another application on the card for the use of shareable services.

#### Loading policies

### **OSP.OTA-LOADING**

Application code, validated or certified depending on the application, is loaded "Over The Air" (OTA) onto (U)SIM Platform using OTA servers of the mobile operator.

If needed, the Card issuer can pre-authorize content loading operation through delegated management privilege to individual on-card representative of APs. In that case the application code is loaded in the APSD.

Once loaded, the application is personalized using the appropriate SD keys.

### **OSP.OTA-SERVERS**

A security policy shall be employed by the mobile operator to ensure the security of the applications stored on its servers.

#### *Application note:*

The policy enforced by the mobile operator to ensure the security of the application can use mechanisms such as access control, isolation, regular check of integrity and encryption.

One possible realization of this Organizational Security Policy is the enforcement of security rules defined in OTA servers security guidance document with regular site inspections to check the applicability of the rules.

#### Key Policies


### **OSP.APSD-KEYS**

The APSD keys personalization can rely either on the key escrow if the APSD has been created before the usage phase of the (U)SIM card or on the CA if the APSD has been created during the usage phase.

In the first case, the security domain keys of the AP (APSD keys) are generated and stored in a secure way by the personalizer. Then, these keys are transmitted to the AP, via the key escrow, at the only mobile operator request.

In the second case, the APSD keys are:

either generated and stored in a secure way by the APSD. Then these keys are securely transmitted to the AP using the CASD (Pull Model of [GP-CCCM]),

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

or created by the AP and securely transferred to the APSD using the CASD (Push Model of [GP-CCCM]).

Generated keys must be unpredictable with use of an appropriate random source used in combination with appropriate pseudo-random techniques. Compromising the security of the key generation method shall require at least as many operations as determining the value of the generated key.

*Application note:*

For more details concerning this OSP, refer to [GP-CCCM].

### **OSP.OPERATOR-KEYS**

The security of the mobile operator keys (ISD keys) must be ensured by a well defined security policy that covers generation, storage, distribution, destruction and recovery. This policy is enforced by the mobile operator in collaboration with the personalizer.

*Application note:*

Token keys used to verify the tokens included in Delegated Management commands (that embed the signature of these commands) must be different for each (U)SIM card in usage.

### **OSP.KEY-GENERATION**

The personalizer must enforce a policy ensuring that generated keys cannot be accessed in plaintext.

*Application note:*

This can be applied by encrypting the generated key just after its generation with the public key of the recipient.

### **OSP.CASD-KEYS**

The security domain keys of the CA must be securely generated and stored in the (U)SIM card during the personalization process. These keys are not modifiable after card issuance.

### **OSP.VASD-KEYS**

The security domain keys of the VA must be securely generated and stored in the (U)SIM card during the personalization process.

#### **Platform**


### **OSP.KEY-CHANGE**

The AP shall change its initial security domain keys (APSD) before any operation on its Security Domain.

#### **GP**

### **OSP.SECURITY-DOMAINS**

Security domains can be dynamically created, deleted and blocked during usage phase in post-issuance mode.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

## **OSP.QUOTAS**

Security domains are subject to quotas of memory at creation.

### **3.4.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

This section describes the organizational security policies to be enforced with respect to the TOE environment.

## **OSP.VERIFICATION**

This policy shall ensure the consistency between the export files used in the verification and those used for installing the verified file. The policy must also ensure that no modification of the file is performed in between its verification and the signing by the verification authority. See #.VERIFICATION for details.

### **3.4.3 (U)SIM**

This section describes the organizational security policies to be enforced with respect to the TOE (U)SIM environment.

## **OSP.SecureAPI**

The TOE must contribute to ensure that application can optimize control on its sensitive operations using a dedicated API provided by TOE. TOE will provide services for secure array management and to detect loss of data integrity and inconsistent execution flow and react against tearing or fault induction.

## **OSP.RNG**

This policy shall ensure the entropy of the random numbers provided by the TOE to applet using [JCAPI] is sufficient. Thus attacker is not able to predict or obtain information on generated numbers.

## **OSP.JCAPI-Services**

This policy shall ensure that hashing and checksum security services defined in [JCAPI] provided by the TOE to applet is secure. Thus attacker is not able to predict or obtain information on manipulated data.

## **OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER**


There are application developers (as Gemalto) considered as trusted by platform issuer and application providers. The confidence in these actors has been obtained by audit of development process and development environment performed by ITSEF during private scheme evaluation or Common Criteria composite evaluation process.

Application note: As a consequence, the development process applied by a trusted developer provides confidence that applications developed by such actors are considered as not aggressive versus the platform and other applications loaded on the platform.

## **OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING**

For Pre-Issuance loading of trusted\* applications, the audited process during Platform evaluation must be used.



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

[\* Application notes: An application is considered as trusted if it has been developed or verified by a trusted actor (as Gemalto). An application developed by a third party can be considered as a trusted application only if it has been verified and signed by verification authority. The application and associated signature will be verified by Gemalto prior authorizing loading in pre-issuance.

As a consequence, the loading process applied by a trusted personalizer provides confidence that applications developed by trusted actors are considered as not aggressive versus the platform and other applications loaded on the platform.]

### **OSP.SERVICE\_AUDIT**

The MNO and GemActivate administrator (usually Gemalto) can audit optional platform service activation using remote service audit.

### **OSP.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW**

The key escrow is a trusted actor in charge of the secure storage of the activation keys generated and stored outside of TOE and import in TOE by the TOE personalizer during initial personalization. He ensures the security of the keys for remote service activation.

### **OSP.EMVUtil\_API**

The TOE must contribute to ensure that Banking application can optimize control on its sensitive operations using a dedicated API providing management of secure container and counter by TOE.

## **3.5 Assumptions**

### **3.5.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile**

The following assumption concerns the product operational environment, after product delivery. It applies to any kind of product, with Basic or SCWS TOE, that is, it holds in the Protection Profiles 09ya and 09yb.

All the assumptions mentioned in the [PP-JCS] Protection Profile are relevant.

This Security Target adds the following assumptions:

#### **3.5.1.1 Actors**

##### **A.MOBILE-OPERATOR**


The mobile operator is a trusted actor responsible for the mobile network and the associated OTA servers.

The mobile operator as Card issuer cannot get access or change the application data which belongs to the AP.

##### **A.OTA-ADMIN**

Administrators of the mobile operator OTA servers are trusted people. They are trained to use and administrate securely those servers. They have the means and the equipments to perform their tasks.



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

They are aware of the sensitivity of the assets they managed and the responsibilities associated to the administration of OTA servers.

*Application note:*

OTA servers security guidance document with regular site inspections shall be employed to check the applicability of the rules.

### **A.APPS-PROVIDER**

The AP is a trusted actor that provides standard or secure applications. He is responsible for his security domain keys (APSD keys).

*Application note:*

An AP generally refers to the entity that issues the application. For instance it can be a financial institution for a payment application such as EMV or a transport operator for a transport application such as Calypso.

### **A.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY**

The VA is a trusted actor who is able to guarantee and check the digital signature attached to a standard or secure application.

*Application note:*

As a consequence, it guarantees the success of the application validation or certification upon loading.

### **A.KEY-ESCROW**

The key escrow is a trusted actor in charge of the secure storage of the initial AP keys generated by the TOE personalizer during initial personalization. He ensures the security of the keys.


### **A.PERSONALIZER**

The personalizer under an Operator's Contract is in charge of the TOE personalization process before card issuance. He ensures the security of the keys he loads on the (U)SIM cards:

- Mobile operator keys including OTA keys (telecom keys either generated by the personalizer or by the mobile operator) and delegated management token keys
- Issuer Security Domain keys (ISD keys or Card issuer keys),
- Application Provider Security Domains keys (APSD keys).
- Controlling Authority Security Domain keys (CASD keys)
- Verification Authority Security Domain keys (VASD keys)

### **A.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY**

The CA is a trusted actor responsible for securing the APSD keys creation and personalization. He is responsible for his security domain keys (CASD keys).

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

### 3.5.1.2 Secure places

#### **A.PRODUCTION**

Production and personalization environment has to be secured as the TOE delivery occurs after Phase 6a.

### 3.5.2 *Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration*


This section introduces the assumptions made on the environment of the TOE.

#### **A.APPLET**

Applets loaded post-issuance do not contain native methods. The Java Card specification explicitly "does not include support for native methods" ([JCV222], §3.3) outside the API.

#### **A.VERIFICATION**

All the bytecodes are verified at least once, before the loading, before the installation or before the execution, depending on the card capabilities, in order to ensure that each bytecode is valid at execution time.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 4 Security Objectives

---

### 4.1 Security Objectives for the TOE

#### 4.1.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

All the platform security objectives given in [PP-JCS] are included into this Protection Profile. The security objectives given hereafter are these specifically relevant for the card management and for the SCWS.

##### 4.1.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes the security objectives for the Basic TOE, applicable to [PPUSIM].

#### Card Management

#### **O.CARD-MANAGEMENT**

The TOE shall provide card management functionalities (loading, installation, extradition, deletion of applications and GP registry updates) in charge of the life cycle of the whole (U)SIM card and installed applications (applets)

The card manager, the application with specific rights responsible for the administration of the smart card, shall control the access to card management functions. It shall also implement the card issuer's policy on card management.

#### *Application note:*

The card manager will be tightly connected in practice with the rest of the TOE, which in return shall very likely rely on the card manager for the effective enforcement of some of its security functions.


The mechanism used to ensure authentication of the TOE issuer, that manages the TOE, or of the Service Providers owning a Security Domain with card management privileges is a secure channel. This channel will be used afterwards to protect commands exchanged with the TOE in confidentiality and integrity.

The platform guarantees that only the ISD or the Service Providers owning a Security Domain with the appropriate privilege (Delegated Management) can manage the applications on the card associated with its Security Domain. This is done accordingly with the card issuer's policy on card management.

The actor performing the operation must beforehand authenticate with the Security Domain. In the case of Delegated Management, the card management command will be associated with an electronic signature (GlobalPlatform token) verified by the ISD before execution.

#### **O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS**

The Card issuer shall not get access or change personalized AP security domain keys which belong to the AP. Modification of a security domain keyset is restricted to the AP who owns the security domain.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

*Application note:*

APs have a set of keys that allows them to establish a secure channel between them and the platform. These keys sets are not known by the TOE issuer. The security domain initial keys are changed before any operation on the SD (OE.KEY-CHANGE) through standard PUT KEY procedures (if the initial keys were kept by key escrow) or through one of the SD personalization mechanisms described in Section 4.3.3 of [GP-UICC].

**O.APPLI-AUTH**

The card manager shall enforce the application security policies established by the card issuer by requiring application authentication during application loading on the card.

*Application note:*

Each application loaded onto the TOE has been signed by the VA. The VA will guarantee that the security policies established by the card issuer on applications are enforced. This authority is present on the TOE as a Security Domain whose role is to verify each signature at application loading.

The platform provides important extra features about application management and especially loading:

- Loaded applications are previously validated by an accredited laboratory for standard applications and certified by an accredited ITSEF for secure applications.

- All loaded applications are associated to a DAP signature generated by a VA which is verified at loading by the third party representative present on the platform (Mandated DAP verification).

Communication

**O.COMM\_AUTH**

The TOE shall authenticate the origin of the card management requests that the card receives, and authenticate itself to the remote actor.

**O.COMM\_INTEGRITY**

The TOE shall verify the integrity of the card management requests that the card receives.

**O.COMM\_CONFIDENTIALITY**


The TOE shall be able to process card management requests containing encrypted data.

SCP

**O.SCP-SUPPORT**

The TOE OS shall support the following functionalities:

- (1) It does not allow the TSFs to be bypassed or altered and does not allow access to other low-level functions than those made available by the packages of the API. That includes the protection of its private data and code (against disclosure or modification) from the Java Card System.
- (2) It provides secure low-level cryptographic processing to the Java Card System, GlobalPlatform.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

- (3) It supports the needs for any update to a single persistent object or class field to be atomic, and possibly a low-level transaction mechanism.
- (4) It allows the Java Card System to store data in "persistent technology memory" or in volatile memory, depending on its needs (for instance, transient objects must not be stored in non-volatile memory). The memory model is structured and allows for low-level control accesses (segmentation fault detection).

#### **4.1.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

This section defines the security objectives to be achieved by the TOE.

##### **4.1.2.1 IDENTIFICATION**

###### **O.SID**

The TOE shall uniquely identify every subject (applet, or package) before granting it access to any service.

##### **4.1.2.2 EXECUTION**

###### **O.FIREWALL**

The TOE shall ensure controlled sharing of data containers owned by applets of different packages or the JCRE and between applets and the TSFs. See #.FIREWALL for details.

###### **O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_CONFID**

The TOE shall ensure that the APDU buffer that is shared by all applications is always cleaned upon applet selection.

The TOE shall ensure that the global byte array used for the invocation of the install method of the selected applet is always cleaned after the return from the install method.

###### **O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_INTEG**


The TOE shall ensure that only the currently selected application may have a write access to the APDU buffer and the global byte array used for the invocation of the install method of the selected applet.

###### **O.NATIVE**

The only means that the Java Card VM shall provide for an application to execute native code is the invocation of a method of the Java Card API, or any additional API. See #.NATIVE for details.

###### **O.OPERATE**

The TOE must ensure continued correct operation of its security functions. See #.OPERATE for details.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## O.REALLOCATION

The TOE shall ensure that the re-allocation of a memory block for the runtime areas of the Java Card VM does not disclose any information that was previously stored in that block.

## O.RESOURCES

The TOE shall control the availability of resources for the applications. See #.RESOURCES for details.

### 4.1.2.3 SERVICES

## O.ALARM

The TOE shall provide appropriate feedback information upon detection of a potential security violation. See #.ALARM for details.

## O.CIPHER

The TOE shall provide a means to cipher sensitive data for applications in a secure way. In particular, the TOE must support cryptographic algorithms consistent with cryptographic usage policies and standards. See #.CIPHER for details.

## O.KEY-MNGT

The TOE shall provide a means to securely manage cryptographic keys. This concerns the correct generation, distribution, access and destruction of cryptographic keys. See #.KEY-MNGT.

## O.PIN-MNGT

The TOE shall provide a means to securely manage PIN objects. See #.PIN-MNGT for details.

*Application note:*

PIN objects may play key roles in the security architecture of client applications. The way they are stored and managed in the memory of the smart card must be carefully considered, and this applies to the whole object rather than the sole value of the PIN. For instance, the try counter's value is as sensitive as that of the PIN.


## O.REMOTE

The TOE shall provide restricted remote access from the CAD to the services implemented by the applets on the card. This particularly concerns the Java Card RMI services introduced in version 2.2.x of the Java Card platform.

## O.TRANSACTION

The TOE must provide a means to execute a set of operations atomically. See #.TRANSACTION for details.

O.KEY-MNGT, O.PIN-MNGT, O.TRANSACTION and O.CIPHER are actually provided to applets in the form of Java Card APIs. Vendor-specific libraries are present on the card and available

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

to applets; those may be built on top of the Java Card API or independently. These proprietary libraries will be evaluated together with the TOE.

#### 4.1.2.4 OBJECT DELETION

##### **O.OBJ-DELETION**

The TOE shall ensure the object deletion shall not break references to objects. See #.OBJ-DELETION for further details.

#### 4.1.2.5 APPLET MANAGEMENT

##### **O.DELETION**

The TOE shall ensure that both applet and package deletion perform as expected. See #.DELETION for details.

##### **O.LOAD**

The TOE shall ensure that the loading of a package into the card is safe.

*Application note:*

Usurpation of identity resulting from a malicious installation of an applet on the card may also be the result of perturbing the communication channel linking the CAD and the card. Even if the CAD is placed in a secure environment, the attacker may try to capture, duplicate, permute or modify the packages sent to the card. He may also try to send one of its own applications as if it came from the card issuer. Thus, this objective is intended to ensure the integrity and authenticity of loaded CAP files.

##### **O.INSTALL**

The TOE shall ensure that the installation of an applet performs as expected (See #.INSTALL for details).

#### 4.1.2.6 SCP

##### **O.SCP.RECOVERY**

If there is a loss of power, or if the smart card is withdrawn from the CAD while an operation is in progress, the SCP must allow the TOE to eventually complete the interrupted operation successfully, or recover to a consistent and secure state.


This security objective refers to the security aspect #.SCP(1): The smart card platform must be secure with respect to the SFRs. Then after a power loss or sudden card removal prior to completion of some communication protocol, the SCP will allow the TOE on the next power up to either complete the interrupted operation or revert to a secure state.

##### **O.SCP.IC**

The SCP shall provide all IC security features against physical attacks.

This security objective refers to the point (7) of the security aspect #.SCP:

It is required that the IC is designed in accordance with a well-defined set of policies and Standards (likely specified in another protection profile), and will be tamper resistant to actually prevent an attacker from extracting or altering security data

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

(like cryptographic keys) by using commonly employed techniques (physical probing and sophisticated analysis of the chip). This especially matters to the management (storage and operation) of cryptographic keys.

#### **4.1.3 (U)SIM**

This section defines the security objectives to be achieved by the TOE(U)SIM.

##### **O.Secure\_API**

The TOE shall provide to application a secure\_API means to optimize control on sensitive operations performed by application.

TOE shall provide services for secure array management and to detect loss of data integrity and inconsistent execution flow and react against tearing or fault induction.

##### **O.RND**

The TOE must contribute to ensure that random numbers shall not be predictable and shall have sufficient entropy.

##### **O.JCAPI-Services**

The TOE must contribute to ensure that data manipulated during SHA and CRC services as defined in [JCAPI] shall not be observed.

##### **O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_AUDIT**

The TOE shall perform remote service audit only when optional platform service audit is authorized and only by an authorized actor. Limited to [MNO or GemActivate Administrator (usually Gemalto)].

##### **O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_ACTIVATION**

The TOE shall perform remote optional platform service activation only when service activation is authorized and only by an authorized actor. Limited to [Gemactivate Administrator (usually Gemalto)]under control of [MNO].

##### **O.EMVUtil\_API**

The TOE shall provide to banking application a secure\_API to optimize control on sensitive object performed by application.

TOE shall provide services for secure container and counter management and to detect loss of data integrity.


## **4.2 Security objectives for the Operational Environment**

### **4.2.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile**

This section introduces the security objectives to be achieved by the environment associated to the TOE.

The significant security objectives for the environment of the TOE are the ones linked to relevant assumptions and OSPs.



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

All the security objectives for the environment of the Java Card System Protection Profile [PP-JCS] are relevant to this Protection Profile except Card Management security objectives which are now part of the TOE.

The specific environment security objectives concerning the (U)SIM Platform are listed below:

#### 4.2.1.1 Basic TOE

##### Actors

#### **OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR**

The mobile operator shall be a trusted actor responsible for the mobile network and the associated OTA servers.

#### **OE.OTA-ADMIN**

Administrators of the mobile operator OTA servers shall be trusted people. They shall be trained to use and administrate those servers. They have the means and the equipments to perform their tasks.

They must be aware of the sensitivity of the assets they manage and the responsibilities associated to the administration of OTA servers.

*Application note:*

One possible realisation of this assumption is the enforcement of security rules defined in an OTA servers security guidance document with regular site inspections to check the applicability of the rules

#### **OE.APPS-PROVIDER**

The AP shall be a trusted actor that provides standard or secure application. He must be responsible of his security domain keys.

#### **OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY**

The VA should be a trusted actor who is able to guarantee and check the digital signature attached to an application.

#### **OE.KEY-ESCROW**

The key escrow shall be a trusted actor in charge of the secure storage of the AP initial keys generated by the personalizer.

#### **OE.PERSONALIZER**


The personalizer shall be a trusted actor in charge of the personalization process. He must ensure the security of the keys it manages and loads into the card:

Mobile operator keys including OTA keys (telecom keys either generated by the personalizer or by the mobile operator),

Issuer Security Domain keys (ISD keys),

Application Provider Security Domain keys (APSD keys).

Controlling Authority Security Domain keys (CASD keys)

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

### **OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY**

The CA shall be a trusted actor responsible for securing the APSD keys creation and personalisation. He must be responsible for his security domain keys (CASD keys).

### **OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN**

The GemActivate administrator shall be a trusted actor responsible for the optional platform service activation in post issuance. The service activation is under the control of the mobile operator as activation is done using OTA communication with MNO OTA servers and associated keys stored in the TOE.

#### Secure places

### **OE.PRODUCTION**

Production and personalization environment if the TOE delivery occurs before Phase 6 of the TOE life cycle must be trusted and secure.

#### Policies

#### *Validation and certification*

### **OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION**

Secure applications must be evaluated and certified at a security level higher or equal than the one of the current Protection Profile.

### **OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION**

Standard applications must be analysed during the validation process in order to ensure that the rules for correct usage of the TOE are still enforced.

### **OE.AID-MANAGEMENT**

The VA or the MNO shall verify that the AID of the application being loaded does not impersonate the AID known by another application on the card for the use of shareable services.


#### *Loading*

### **OE.OTA-LOADING**

Application code, validated or certified depending on the application, is loaded "Over The Air" (OTA) onto (U)SIM Platform using OTA servers. This process should protect the confidentiality and the integrity of the loaded application code.

### **OE.OTA-SERVERS**

The mobile operator must enforce a policy to ensure the security of the applications stored on its servers.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

## Keys

### OE.AP-KEYS

The SD keys personalizer, the AP and the key escrow must enforce a security policy on SD keys in order to secure their transmission.

### OE.OPERATOR-KEYS

The security of the mobile operator keys must be ensured in the environment of the TOE.

### OE.KEY-GENERATION

The personalizer must ensure that the generated keys cannot be accessed by unauthorized users.

### OE.CA-KEYS

The security domain keys of the CA must be securely generated prior storage in the (U)SIM card.

### OE.VA-KEYS

The security domain keys of the VA must be securely generated prior storage in the (U)SIM card.

#### Platform

### OE.KEY-CHANGE

The AP must change its security domain initial keys before any operation on it.

#### GP

### OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS

Security domains can be dynamically created, deleted and blocked during usage phase in post-issuance mode.

### OE.QUOTAS

Security domains are subject to quotas of memory at creation.


#### Applications

### OE.SHARE-CONTROL

All applications (standard and secure applications) must have means to identify the applications with whom they share data using the Shareable Interface.

#### *Application note:*

If an application implementing a Shareable Interface has to share data with a new application, it has to be updated, and thus re-validated, to take into account the identification of this new application (through its AID for instance) before sharing data.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

#### 4.2.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration

This section introduces the security objectives to be achieved by the environment.

##### **OE.APPLET**

No applet loaded post-issuance shall contain native methods.

##### **OE.VERIFICATION**

All the bytecodes shall be verified at least once, before the loading, before the installation or before the execution, depending on the card capabilities, in order to ensure that each bytecode is valid at execution time. See #.VERIFICATION for details.

#### 4.2.3 (U)SIM

##### **OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER**

The trusted application developer shall be a trusted actor that provides basic or secure application where correct usage of the TOE has been verified applying a secure development process in secure development environment.

##### **OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING**

The trusted pre-issuance loading on the platform must be done only using verified applet applying an audited process in a secure environment.

##### **OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW**

The key escrow is a trusted actor must ensures the security of the keys used for remote service activation during generation, storage, importation in TOE and usage.

### 4.3 Security Objectives Rationale


#### 4.3.1 Threats

##### 4.3.1.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

###### Basic TOE

**T.PHYSICAL** This threat is countered by physical protections which rely on the underlying platform and are therefore an environmental issue.

The security objectives O.SCP-SUPPORT and O.SCP.IC protect sensitive assets of the platform against loss of integrity and confidentiality and especially ensure the TSFs cannot be bypassed or altered. Physical protections rely on the underlying platform and are therefore an environmental issue.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

**T.INTEG-USER-DATA** The security objective O.SCP-SUPPORT provides functionality to ensure atomicity of sensitive operations, secure low level access control and protection against bypassing of the security features of the TOE. In particular, it explicitly ensures the independent protection in integrity of the platform data.

The security objectives O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS, OE.CA-KEYS, OE.VA-KEYS and OE.AP-KEYS ensure that personalization of the application by its associated security domain is only performed by the authorized AP.

The security objectives from [PP-JCS] covering the threat T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA also cover this threat.

**T.COM\_EXPLOIT** This threat is covered by the following security objectives:

O.COMM\_AUTH prevents unauthorized users from initiating a malicious card management operation.

O.COMM\_INTEGRITY protects the integrity of the card management data while it is in transit to the (U)SIM card.

O.COMM\_CONFIDENTIALITY prevents from disclosing encrypted data transiting to the (U)SIM card.

**T.UNAUTHORIZED\_CARD\_MNGT** This threat is covered by the following security objectives:

O.CARD-MANAGEMENT controls the access to card management functions such as the loading, installation, extradition or deletion of applets.

O.COMM\_AUTH prevents unauthorized users from initiating a malicious card management operation.

O.COMM\_INTEGRITY protects the integrity of the card management data while it is in transit to the (U)SIM card.


O.APPLI-AUTH which requires for loading all applications to be authenticated.

O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS which restricts the modification of an AP security domain keyset to the AP who owns it.

**T.LIFE\_CYCLE** This threat is covered by the security objectives:

O.CARD-MANAGEMENT that controls the access to card management functions such as the loading, installation, extradition or deletion of applets and prevent attacks intended to modify or exploit the current life cycle of applications

O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS that restricts the use of an AP security domain keysets, and thus the management of the applications related to this SD, to the AP who owns it.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

**T.UNAUTHORIZED\_ACCESS** This threat is covered by the security objective on the operational environment of the TOE OE.SHARE-CONTROL which ensures that sharing objects functionality is strictly controlled to stop data transitive flows between applets and thus stop access to unauthorized data.

#### 4.3.1.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration

##### CONFIDENTIALITY

**T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA** This threat is countered by the security objective for the operational environment regarding bytecode verification (OE.VERIFICATION) and guide application (OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION). It is also covered by the isolation commitments stated in the (O.FIREWALL) objective. It relies in its turn on the correct identification of applets stated in (O.SID). Moreover, as the firewall is dynamically enforced, it shall never stop operating, as stated in the (O.OPERATE) objective.

As the firewall is a software tool automating critical controls, the objective O.ALARM asks for it to provide clear warning and error messages, so that the appropriate counter-measure can be taken.


The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

The objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE and O.ALARM objectives of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that these latter objectives contribute to counter.

As applets may need to share some data or communicate with the CAD, cryptographic functions are required to actually protect the exchanged information (O.CIPHER). Remark that even if the TOE shall provide access to the appropriate TSFs, it is still the responsibility of the applets to use them. Keys, PIN's are particular cases of an application's sensitive data (the Java Card System may possess keys as well) that ask for appropriate management (O.KEY-MNGT, O.PIN-MNGT, O.TRANSACTION). If the PIN class of the Java Card API is used, the objective (O.FIREWALL) shall contribute in covering this threat by controlling the sharing of the global PIN between the applets.

Other application data that is sent to the applet as clear text arrives to the APDU buffer, which is a resource shared by all applications. The disclosure of such data is prevented by the security objective O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_CONFID.

Finally, any attempt to read a piece of information that was previously used by an application but has been logically deleted is countered by the O.REALLOCATION objective. That objective states that any information that was formerly stored in a memory block shall be cleared before the block is reused.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

**T.CONFID-JCS-CODE** This threat is countered by the list of properties described in the (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect. Bytecode verification ensures that each of the instructions used on the Java Card platform is used for its intended purpose and in the intended scope of accessibility. As none of those instructions enables reading a piece of code, no Java Card applet can therefore be executed to disclose a piece of code. Native applications are also harmless because of the objective O.NATIVE and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION, so no application can be run to disclose a piece of code.

The (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect is addressed in this PP by the objective for the environment OE.VERIFICATION.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

**T.CONFID-JCS-DATA** This threat is covered by bytecode verification (OE.VERIFICATION) and the isolation commitments stated in the (O.FIREWALL) security objective. This latter objective also relies in its turn on the correct identification of applets stated in (O.SID). Moreover, as the firewall is dynamically enforced, it shall never stop operating, as stated in the (O.OPERATE) objective.

As the firewall is a software tool automating critical controls, the objective O.ALARM asks for it to provide clear warning and error messages, so that the appropriate counter-measure can be taken.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

The objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE and O.ALARM objectives of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that these latter objectives contribute to counter.


### INTEGRITY

**T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE** This threat is countered by the list of properties described in the (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect. Bytecode verification ensures that each of the instructions used on the Java Card platform is used for its intended purpose and in the intended scope of accessibility. As none of these instructions enables modifying a piece of code, no Java Card applet can therefore be executed to modify a piece of code. Native applications are also harmless because of the objectives (O.NATIVE) and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION, so no application can be run to modify a piece of code.

The (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect is addressed in this configuration by the objective for the environment OE.VERIFICATION.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

**T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE.LOAD** This threat is countered by the security objective O.LOAD which ensures that the loading of packages is done securely and thus preserves the integrity of packages code.

By controlling the access to card management functions such as the installation, update or deletion of applets the objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT contributes to cover this threat.

**T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA** This threat is countered by bytecode verification (OE.VERIFICATION and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION) and the isolation commitments stated in the (O.FIREWALL) objective. This latter objective also relies in its turn on the correct identification of applets stated in (O.SID). Moreover, as the firewall is dynamically enforced, it shall never stop operating, as stated in the (O.OPERATE) objective.

As the firewall is a software tool automating critical controls, the objective O.ALARM asks for it to provide clear warning and error messages, so that the appropriate counter-measure can be taken.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

The objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE and O.ALARM objectives of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that these latter objectives contribute to counter.

Concerning the confidentiality and integrity of application sensitive data, as applets may need to share some data or communicate with the CAD, cryptographic functions are required to actually protect the exchanged information (O.CIPHER). Remark that even if the TOE shall provide access to the appropriate TSFs, it is still the responsibility of the applets to use them. Keys and PIN's are particular cases of an application's sensitive data (the Java Card System may possess keys as well) that ask for appropriate management (O.KEY-MNGT, O.PIN-MNGT, O.TRANSACTION). If the PIN class of the Java Card API is used, the objective (O.FIREWALL) is also concerned.

Other application data that is sent to the applet as clear text arrives to the APDU buffer, which is a resource shared by all applications. The integrity of the information stored in that buffer is ensured by the objective O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_INTEG.


Finally, any attempt to read a piece of information that was previously used by an application but has been logically deleted is countered by the O.REALLOCATION objective. That objective states that any information that was formerly stored in a memory block shall be cleared before the block is reused.

**T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA.LOAD** This threat is countered by the security objective O.LOAD which ensures that the loading of packages is done securely and thus preserves the integrity of applications data.

By controlling the access to card management functions such as the installation, update or deletion of applets the objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT contributes to cover this threat.

**T.INTEG-JCS-CODE** This threat is countered by the list of properties described in the (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect. Bytecode verification ensures that each of the instructions used on the Java Card platform is used for its intended purpose and in the



	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

intended scope of accessibility. As none of these instructions enables modifying a piece of code, no Java Card applet can therefore be executed to modify a piece of code. Native applications are also harmless because of the objectives O.NATIVE and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION, so no application can be run to modify a piece of code.

The (#.VERIFICATION) security aspect is addressed in this configuration by the objective for the environment OE.VERIFICATION.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

**T.INTEG-JCS-DATA** This threat is countered by bytecode verification (OE.VERIFICATION) and guidance verification (OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION) and the isolation commitments stated in the (O.FIREWALL) objective. This latter objective also relies in its turn on the correct identification of applets stated in (O.SID). Moreover, as the firewall is dynamically enforced, it shall never stop operating, as stated in the (O.OPERATE) objective.

As the firewall is a software tool automating critical controls, the objective O.ALARM asks for it to provide clear warning and error messages, so that the appropriate counter-measure can be taken.

The objectives O.CARD-MANAGEMENT and OE.VERIFICATION contribute to cover this threat by controlling the access to card management functions and by checking the bytecode, respectively.

The objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE and O.ALARM objectives of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that these latter objectives contribute to counter.

### IDENTITY USURPATION

**T.SID.1** As impersonation is usually the result of successfully disclosing and modifying some assets, this threat is mainly countered by the objectives concerning the isolation of application data (like PINs), ensured by the (O.FIREWALL). Uniqueness of subject-identity (O.SID) also participates to face this threat. It should be noticed that the AIDs, which are used for applet identification, are TSF data.


In this configuration, usurpation of identity resulting from a malicious installation of an applet on the card is covered by the objective O.INSTALL.

The installation parameters of an applet (like its name) are loaded into a global array that is also shared by all the applications. The disclosure of those parameters (which could be used to impersonate the applet) is countered by the objectives O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_CONFID and O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_INTEG.

The objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT contributes, by preventing usurpation of identity resulting from a malicious installation of an applet on the card, to counter this threat.

**T.SID.2** This is covered by integrity of TSF data, subject-identification (O.SID), the firewall (O.FIREWALL) and its good working order (O.OPERATE).

The objective O.INSTALL contributes to counter this threat by ensuring that installing an applet has no effect on the state of other applets and thus can't change the TOE's attribution of privileged roles.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

The objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE objective of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that this latter objective contributes to counter.

### UNAUTHORIZED EXECUTION

**T.EXE-CODE.1** Unauthorized execution of a method is prevented by the objectives OE.VERIFICATION and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION. This threat particularly concerns the point (8) of the security aspect #VERIFICATION (access modifiers and scope of accessibility for classes, fields and methods). The O.FIREWALL objective is also concerned, because it prevents the execution of non-shareable methods of a class instance by any subject apart from the class instance owner.

**T.EXE-CODE.2** Unauthorized execution of a method fragment or arbitrary data is prevented by the objectives OE.VERIFICATION and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION. This threat particularly concerns those points of the security aspect related to control flow confinement and the validity of the method references used in the bytecodes.

**T.EXE-CODE-REMOTE** The O.REMOTE security objective contributes to prevent the invocation of a method that is not supposed to be accessible from outside the card.

**T.NATIVE** This threat is countered by O.NATIVE which ensures that a Java Card applet can only access native methods indirectly that is, through an API which is assumed to be secure thanks to OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION. OE.APPLET also covers this threat by ensuring that no native applets shall be loaded in post-issuance. In addition to this, the bytecode verifier also prevents the program counter of an applet to jump into a piece of native code by confining the control flow to the currently executed methods OE.VERIFICATION and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION.


### DENIAL OF SERVICE

**T.RESOURCES** This threat is directly countered by objectives on resource-management (O.RESOURCES) for runtime purposes and good working order (O.OPERATE) in a general manner.

Consumption of resources during installation and other card management operations are covered, in case of failure, by O.INSTALL.

It should be noticed that, for what relates to CPU usage, the Java Card platform is single-threaded and it is possible for an ill-formed application (either native or not) to monopolize the CPU. However, a smart card can be physically interrupted (card removal or hardware reset) and most CADs implement a timeout policy that prevent them from being blocked should a card fails to answer. That point is out of scope of this Protection Profile, though.

Finally, the objectives O.SCP.RECOVERY and O.SCP-SUPPORT are intended to support the O.OPERATE and O.RESOURCES objectives of the TOE, so they are indirectly related to the threats that these latter objectives contribute to counter.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


**CARD MANAGEMENT**

**T.DELETION** This threat is covered by the O.DELETION security objective which ensures that both applet and package deletion perform as expected.

The objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT controls the access to card management functions and thus contributes to cover this threat.

**T.INSTALL** This threat is covered by the security objective O.INSTALL which ensures that the installation of an applet performs as expected and the security objectives O.LOAD which ensures that the loading of a package into the card is safe.

The objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT controls the access to card management functions and thus contributes to cover this threat.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## SERVICES

**T.OBJ-DELETION** This threat is covered by the O.OBJ-DELETION security objective which ensures that object deletion shall not break references to objects.

### 4.3.1.3 (U)SIM

**T.UNAUTHORIZED\_ACCESS\_TO\_SERVICE** This threat is countered by the security objectives O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_ACTIVATION and OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN where only authorized and trusted actor is able to activate optional services.

## 4.3.2 Organisational Security Policies

### 4.3.2.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

#### Basic TOE

*Standard and secure applications policies*

**OSP.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION.

**OSP.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION.

**OSP.SHARE-CONTROL** This OSP is directly enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.SHARE-CONTROL.

**OSP.AID-MANAGEMENT** This OSP is directly enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.AID-MANAGEMENT.

*Loading policies*

**OSP.OTA-LOADING** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.OTA-LOADING.


**OSP.OTA-SERVERS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.OTA-SERVERS.

*Key Policies*

**OSP.APSD-KEYS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.AP-KEYS.

**OSP.OPERATOR-KEYS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.OPERATOR-KEYS.

**OSP.KEY-GENERATION** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.KEY-GENERATION.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

**OSP.CASD-KEYS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.CA-KEYS.

**OSP.VASD-KEYS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.VA-KEYS.

Platform

**OSP.KEY-CHANGE** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.KEY-CHANGE.

*GP*

**OSP.SECURITY-DOMAINS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS.

**OSP.QUOTAS** This OSP is enforced by the security objective for the operational environment of the TOE OE.QUOTAS.

#### 4.3.2.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration

**OSP.VERIFICATION** This policy is upheld by the security objectives of the environment OE.VERIFICATION and OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION which guarantees that all the bytecodes shall be verified at least once, before the loading, before the installation or before the execution in order to ensure that each bytecode is valid at execution time.

#### 4.3.2.3 (U)SIM

**OSP.SecureAPI** This OSP is enforced by the TOE security objective O.Secure\_API.

**OSP.RNG** This OSP is enforced by the TOE security objective O.RND.

**OSP.JCAPI-Services** This OSP is enforced by the TOE security objective O.JCAPI-Services.


**OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER** This OSP is enforced by the security objective OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER.

**OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING** This OSP is enforced by the security objective OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING.

**OSP.SERVICE\_AUDIT** This OSP is directly enforced by the security objective O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_AUDIT.

**OSP.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW** This OSP is enforced by the security objective OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW.

**OSP.EMVUtil\_API** This OSP is enforced by the TOE security objective O.EMVUtil\_API.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### 4.3.3 Assumptions

#### 4.3.3.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

##### Actors

**A.MOBILE-OPERATOR** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR.

**A.OTA-ADMIN** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.OTA-ADMIN.

**A.APPS-PROVIDER** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.APPS-PROVIDER.

**A.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY.

**A.KEY-ESCROW** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.KEY-ESCROW.

**A.PERSONALIZER** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.PERSONALIZER.

**A.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY.

##### Secure Places

**A.PRODUCTION** This assumption is directly upheld by OE.PRODUCTION.

#### 4.3.3.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration

**A.APPLET** This assumption is upheld by the security objective for the operational environment OE.APPLET which ensures that no applet loaded post-issuance shall contain native methods.

**A.VERIFICATION** This assumption is upheld by the security objective on the operational environment OE.VERIFICATION which guarantees that all the bytecodes shall be verified at least once, before the loading, before the installation or before the execution in order to ensure that each bytecode is valid at execution time.


### 4.3.4 Security Objectives for the TOE

#### 4.3.4.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

##### Basic TOE


##### *Card Management*

**O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS** This objective participates to cover the following threats: T.LIFE\_CYCLE, T.UNAUTHORIZED\_CARD\_MNGT, T.INTEG-USER-DATA.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>


#### 4.3.5 SPD and Security Objectives

Threats	Security Objectives	Rationale
<a href="#">T.PHYSICAL</a>	<a href="#">O.SCP.IC</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a>	<a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">OE.CA-KEYS</a> , <a href="#">OE.AP-KEYS</a> , <a href="#">OE.VA-KEYS</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.COM_EXPLOIT</a>	<a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED_CARD_MNGT</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.LIFE_CYCLE</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS</a>	<a href="#">OE.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a> , <a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-CODE</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.NATIVE</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.NATIVE</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE.LOAD</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Threats	Security Objectives	Rationale
<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS INTEG</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a> , <a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA.LOAD</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-CODE</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.NATIVE</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.SID.1</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS INTEG</a> , <a href="#">O.INSTALL</a> , <a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.SID.2</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.INSTALL</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.1</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.2</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.EXE-CODE-REMOTE</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.NATIVE</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">OE.APPLET</a> , <a href="#">O.NATIVE</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a>	<a href="#">O.INSTALL</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Threats	Security Objectives	Rationale
<a href="#">T.DELETION</a>	<a href="#">O.DELETION</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.INSTALL</a>	<a href="#">O.INSTALL</a> , <a href="#">O.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.OBJ-DELETION</a>	<a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>
<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS TO SERVICE</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE SERVICE ACTIVATION</a> , <a href="#">OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.1</a>


**Table 8 Threats and Security Objectives - Coverage**

Security Objectives	Threats	Rationale
<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED CARD MNGT</a> , <a href="#">T.LIFE_CYCLE</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.1</a> , <a href="#">T.DELETION</a> , <a href="#">T.INSTALL</a>	
<a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED CARD MNGT</a> , <a href="#">T.LIFE_CYCLE</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.4</a>
<a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>	<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED CARD MNGT</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a>	<a href="#">T.COM_EXPLOIT</a> , <a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED CARD MNGT</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a>	<a href="#">T.COM_EXPLOIT</a> , <a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED CARD MNGT</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>	<a href="#">T.COM_EXPLOIT</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>	<a href="#">T.PHYSICAL</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a> , <a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a>	
<a href="#">O.SID</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.1</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a>	
<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.1</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a> , <a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.1</a>	
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.1</a>	
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_INTEG</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.1</a>	
<a href="#">O.NATIVE</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.NATIVE</a>	
<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a> , <a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a>	
<a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>	<a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a>	




Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Threats	Rationale
<a href="#">O.ALARM</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>	<a href="#">T.EXE-CODE-REMOTE</a>	
<a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>	<a href="#">T.OBJ-DELETION</a>	
<a href="#">O.DELETION</a>	<a href="#">T.DELETION</a>	
<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA.LOAD</a> , <a href="#">T.INSTALL</a>	
<a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>	<a href="#">T.SID.1</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a> , <a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">T.INSTALL</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.SID.2</a> , <a href="#">T.RESOURCES</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP.IC</a>	<a href="#">T.PHYSICAL</a>	
<a href="#">O.Secure API</a>		
<a href="#">O.RND</a>		
<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>		
<a href="#">O.REMOTE SERVICE AUDIT</a>		
<a href="#">O.REMOTE SERVICE ACTIVATION</a>	<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS TO SERVICE</a>	
<a href="#">O.EMVUtil API</a>		
<a href="#">OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>		
<a href="#">OE.OTA-ADMIN</a>		
<a href="#">OE.APPS-PROVIDER</a>		
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>		
<a href="#">OE.KEY-ESCROW</a>		
<a href="#">OE.PERSONALIZER</a>		
<a href="#">OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>		

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Threats	Rationale
<a href="#">OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN</a>	<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS TO SERVICE</a>	
<a href="#">OE.PRODUCTION</a>		
<a href="#">OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>		
<a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.1</a> , <a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.2</a> , <a href="#">T.NATIVE</a>	
<a href="#">OE.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>		
<a href="#">OE.OTA-LOADING</a>		
<a href="#">OE.OTA-SERVERS</a>		
<a href="#">OE.AP-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">OE.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>		
<a href="#">OE.KEY-GENERATION</a>		
<a href="#">OE.CA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">OE.VA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">T.INTEG-USER-DATA</a>	
<a href="#">OE.KEY-CHANGE</a>		
<a href="#">OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>		
<a href="#">OE.QUOTAS</a>		
<a href="#">OE.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	<a href="#">T.UNAUTHORIZED ACCESS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.APPLLET</a>	<a href="#">T.NATIVE</a>	
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">T.CONFID-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.CONFID-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-APPLI-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-CODE</a> , <a href="#">T.INTEG-JCS-DATA</a> , <a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.1</a> , <a href="#">T.EXE-CODE.2</a> , <a href="#">T.NATIVE</a>	
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>		
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>		
<a href="#">OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>		

**Table 9 Security Objectives and Threats - Coverage**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Organisational Security Policies	Security Objectives	Rationale
<a href="#">OSP.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	<a href="#">OE.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">OE.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.OTA-LOADING</a>	<a href="#">OE.OTA-LOADING</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.OTA-SERVERS</a>	<a href="#">OE.OTA-SERVERS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.APSD-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OE.AP-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OE.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.KEY-GENERATION</a>	<a href="#">OE.KEY-GENERATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.CASD-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OE.CA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.VASD-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OE.VA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.KEY-CHANGE</a>	<a href="#">OE.KEY-CHANGE</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>	<a href="#">OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.QUOTAS</a>	<a href="#">OE.QUOTAS</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">A.KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">OE.KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.SecureAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.RNG</a>	<a href="#">O.RND</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.JCAPI-Services</a>	<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>	<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>	<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.SERVICE_AUDIT</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>
<a href="#">OSP.EMVUtil_API</a>	<a href="#">O.EMVUtil_API</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.2</a>

**Table 10 OSPs and Security Objectives - Coverage**



Reference

D1255596

Release

1.2p

(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)

Classification level


Public

Pages

177

Security Objectives	Organisational Security Policies
<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	
<a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>	
<a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a>	
<a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>	
<a href="#">O.SID</a>	
<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>	
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID</a>	
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_INTEG</a>	
<a href="#">O.NATIVE</a>	
<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>	
<a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a>	
<a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>	
<a href="#">O.ALARM</a>	
<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a>	
<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>	
<a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>	
<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>	
<a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>	
<a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>	
<a href="#">O.DELETION</a>	
<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>	
<a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>	
<a href="#">O.SCP.IC</a>	
<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>	<a href="#">OSP.SecureAPI</a>
<a href="#">O.RND</a>	<a href="#">OSP.RNG</a>
<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>	<a href="#">OSP.JCAPI-Services</a>
<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a>	<a href="#">OSP.SERVICE_AUDIT</a>
<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>	

Security Objectives	Organisational Security Policies
<a href="#">OE.EMVUtil API</a>	<a href="#">OSP.EMVUtil API</a>
<a href="#">OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>	
<a href="#">OE.OTA-ADMIN</a>	
<a href="#">OE.APPS-PROVIDER</a>	
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>	
<a href="#">OE.KEY-ESCROW</a>	
<a href="#">OE.PERSONALIZER</a>	
<a href="#">OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>	
<a href="#">OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN</a>	
<a href="#">OE.PRODUCTION</a>	
<a href="#">OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">OSP.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>
<a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	<a href="#">OSP.VERIFICATION</a> , <a href="#">OSP.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>
<a href="#">OE.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">OSP.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>
<a href="#">OE.OTA-LOADING</a>	<a href="#">OSP.OTA-LOADING</a>
<a href="#">OE.OTA-SERVERS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.OTA-SERVERS</a>
<a href="#">OE.AP-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.APSD-KEYS</a>
<a href="#">OE.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>
<a href="#">OE.KEY-GENERATION</a>	<a href="#">OSP.KEY-GENERATION</a>
<a href="#">OE.CA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.CASD-KEYS</a>
<a href="#">OE.VA-KEYS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.VASD-KEYS</a>
<a href="#">OE.KEY-CHANGE</a>	<a href="#">OSP.KEY-CHANGE</a>
<a href="#">OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>
<a href="#">OE.QUOTAS</a>	<a href="#">OSP.QUOTAS</a>
<a href="#">OE.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	<a href="#">OSP.SHARE-CONTROL</a>
<a href="#">OE.APPLET</a>	
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">OSP.VERIFICATION</a>
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>	<a href="#">OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>	<a href="#">OSP.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>
<a href="#">OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">OSP.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>


	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**Table 11 Security Objectives and OSPs - Coverage**

Assumptions	Security objectives for the Operational Environment	Rationale
<a href="#">A.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>	<a href="#">OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.OTA-ADMIN</a>	<a href="#">OE.OTA-ADMIN</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.APPS-PROVIDER</a>	<a href="#">OE.APPS-PROVIDER</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">OE.KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.PERSONALIZER</a>	<a href="#">OE.PERSONALIZER</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.PRODUCTION</a>	<a href="#">OE.PRODUCTION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.APPLLET</a>	<a href="#">OE.APPLLET</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>
<a href="#">A.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">Section 2.3.3</a>


**Table 12 Assumptions and Security Objectives for the Operational Environment - Coverage**



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security objectives for the Operational Environment	Assumptions
<a href="#">OE.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>	<a href="#">A.MOBILE-OPERATOR</a>
<a href="#">OE.OTA-ADMIN</a>	<a href="#">A.OTA-ADMIN</a>
<a href="#">OE.APPS-PROVIDER</a>	<a href="#">A.APPS-PROVIDER</a>
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">A.VERIFICATION-AUTHORITY</a>
<a href="#">OE.KEY-ESCROW</a>	<a href="#">A.KEY-ESCROW</a>
<a href="#">OE.PERSONALIZER</a>	<a href="#">A.PERSONALIZER</a>
<a href="#">OE.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>	<a href="#">A.CONTROLLING-AUTHORITY</a>
<a href="#">OE.GEMACTIVATE-ADMIN</a>	
<a href="#">OE.PRODUCTION</a>	<a href="#">A.PRODUCTION</a>
<a href="#">OE.SECURE-APPS-CERTIFICATION</a>	
<a href="#">OE.BASIC-APPS-VALIDATION</a>	
<a href="#">OE.AID-MANAGEMENT</a>	
<a href="#">OE.OTA-LOADING</a>	
<a href="#">OE.OTA-SERVERS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.AP-KEYS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.OPERATOR-KEYS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.KEY-GENERATION</a>	
<a href="#">OE.CA-KEYS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.VA-KEYS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.KEY-CHANGE</a>	
<a href="#">OE.SECURITY-DOMAINS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.QUOTAS</a>	
<a href="#">OE.SHARE-CONTROL</a>	
<a href="#">OE.APPLLET</a>	<a href="#">A.APPLLET</a>
<a href="#">OE.VERIFICATION</a>	<a href="#">A.VERIFICATION</a>
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-DEVELOPER</a>	
<a href="#">OE.TRUSTED-APPS-PRE-ISSUANCE LOADING</a>	
<a href="#">OE.ACTIVATION-KEY-ESCROW</a>	

**Table 13 Security Objectives for the Operational Environment and Assumptions - Coverage**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 5 Extended requirements

---

### 5.1 Extended families

#### 5.1.1 Extended family FCS\_RND - Random Number Generation

##### 5.1.1.1 Description

This family defines quality requirements for the generation of random numbers which are intended to be used for cryptographic purposes.

##### 5.1.1.2 Extended components

###### Extended component FCS\_RND.1

###### *Description*

The generation of random numbers requires that random numbers meet a defined quality metric.

###### *Definition*

#### **FCS\_RND.1 Random Number Generation**

**FCS\_RND.1.1** The TSF shall provide a mechanism to generate random numbers that meet [assignment: a defined quality metric].


Dependencies: No dependencies.

###### *Rationale*

It was chosen to define FCS\_RNG.1 explicitly, because Part 2 of the Common Criteria do not contain generic security functional requirements for Random Number generation.

##### 5.1.1.3 Rationale

This family has been introduced initially by IC manufacturer to offer unpredictable random number generation. It is extended here to software platform.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 6 Security Requirements

---

### 6.1 Security Functional Requirements

#### 6.1.1 (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

This section describes the requirements imposed on the TOE in order to achieve the security objectives laid down in the previous chapter. All the requirements identified in this section are instances of those stated in [CC-2].

The Java Card System Platform security functional requirements are included into this Protection Profile.

The SFRs listed below state requirements specific to the (U)SIM Platform.

##### 6.1.1.1 Basic TOE

This section describes the SFR for the Basic TOE, applicable to [PPUSIM].

##### Card Manager (CMGRG)

This section contains the security requirements for the card manager.

The security requirements below help to define a policy for controlling access to card content management operations and for expressing card issuer security concerns. Most of them come from [JCS] but are instantiated to add more precisions regarding (U)SIM card content management. This policy depends on the particular security and card management architecture present in the card. Therefore the policy shall be instantiated when developing conformant Security Targets.

##### *Card Content Management*

<b>FCS_COP.1/DAP Cryptographic operation</b>
--

**FCS\_COP.1.1/DAP** The TSF shall perform **verification of the DAP signature attached to Executable Load Applications** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm


**PKC Scheme: SHA-1 hash and PKCS#1 RSA signature**  
**or DES Scheme: Single DES plus final Triple DES MAC (Retail MAC)**

and cryptographic key sizes

**PKC Scheme: RSA key of minimum length 1024 bits**  
**DES Scheme: DES key of minimum length 16 bytes**

that meet the following:

**Sections C.1.2 and C.6 of [GP]**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**PKC Scheme: SSA-PKCS1-v1\_5 as defined in PKCS#1**

**DES Scheme: ISO 9797-1 as MAC Algorithm 3 with output transformation 3, without truncation, and with DES taking the place of the block cipher.**

### **FDP\_ITC.2/CCM Import of user data with security attributes**

**FDP\_ITC.2.1/CCM** The TSF shall enforce the **Security Domain access control policy and the Secure Channel Protocol information flow policy** when importing user data, controlled under the SFP, from outside of the TOE.

**FDP\_ITC.2.2/CCM** The TSF shall use the security attributes associated with the imported user data.

**FDP\_ITC.2.3/CCM** The TSF shall ensure that the protocol used provides for the unambiguous association between the security attributes and the user data received.

**FDP\_ITC.2.4/CCM** The TSF shall ensure that interpretation of the security attributes of the imported user data is as intended by the source of the user data.

**FDP\_ITC.2.5/CCM** The TSF shall enforce the following rules when importing user data controlled under the SFP from outside the TOE: **The loading of a new Executable Load File is allowed only if, AID attribute of each dependent Executable File is equal to the identified AID in the CAP File, such AID is unique, SD is personalized and authorized to load. Otherwise, the load of ELF is rejected.**


*Application note:*

This Functional Component Instance enforces a security information flow control policy. Rules must be defined for importation operations. These rules must take into account all user data.

### **FDP\_ROL.1/CCM Basic rollback**

**FDP\_ROL.1.1/CCM** The TSF shall enforce **Security Domain access control policy** to permit the rollback of the **installation operation** on the **executable files and application instances**.

**FDP\_ROL.1.2/CCM** The TSF shall permit operations to be rolled back within the **size of the available memory when the card content management operation starts**.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FDP\_UIT.1/CCM Data exchange integrity

**FDP\_UIT.1.1/CCM** The TSF shall enforce the **Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy and the Security Domain access control policy** to **transmit and receive** user data in a manner protected from **modification, deletion, insertion and replay** errors.

**FDP\_UIT.1.2/CCM** The TSF shall be able to determine on receipt of user data, whether **modification, deletion, insertion and replay** has occurred.

### FPT\_FLS.1/CCM Failure with preservation of secure state

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/CCM** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **the Security Domain fails to load/install an Executable File / application instance as described in GP22 §9.3.5.**

*Security Domain*

### FDP\_ACC.1/SD Subset access control

**FDP\_ACC.1.1/SD** The TSF shall enforce the **Security Domain access control policy** on  
**Subjects: S.INSTALLER, S.ADEL, S.CAD (from [PP-JCS]) and S.SD**  
**Objects: Delegation Token, DAP Block and Load File**  
**Operations: GlobalPlatform's card content management APDU commands and API methods.**

### FDP\_ACF.1/SD Security attribute based access control


**FDP\_ACF.1.1/SD** The TSF shall enforce the **Security Domain access control policy** to objects based on the following:

**Subjects:**

**S.INSTALLER, defined in [PP-JCS] and represented by the GlobalPlatform Environment (OPEN) on the card, the Card Life Cycle attributes (defined in Section 5.1.1 of [GP]);**

**S.ADEL, also defined in [PP-JCS] and represented by the GlobalPlatform Environment (OPEN) on the card;**

**S.SD receiving the Card Content Management commands (through APDUs or APIs) with a set of privileges (defined in Section 6.6.1 of [GP]), a life-cycle status (defined in Section 5.3.2 of [GP]) and a Secure Communication Security level (defined in Section 10.6 of [GP]);**

	Reference	D1255596	Release	1.2p <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	Public	Pages	177

**S.CAD, defined in [PP-JCS], the off-card entity that communicates with the S.INSTALLER through S.SD;**

**Objects:**

**The Delegation Token, in case of Delegated Management operations, with the attributes Present or Not Present;**

**The DAP Block, in case of application loading, with the attributes Present or Not Present;**

**The Load File or Executable File, in case of application loading, installation, extradition or registry update, with a set of intended privileges and its targeted associated SD AID.**

**the following security attributes:**

**The Default Selected attribute specifies whether the applet instance is the one that should be executed when no application has been explicitly selected.**

**The Application State attribute specifies the current life cycle state of the application instance, which may be either SELECTABLE, APPLICATION\_SPECIFIC, LOCKED.**

**The CardState attribute, is the current state in the life cycle of the card, which may be either OP\_READY, INITIALIZED, SECURED, CARD\_LOCKED, or TERMINATED.**

**The Card Lock attribute specifies whether the applet is allowed to temporary lock the services of the smart card.**

**The Card Termination attribute specifies whether the applet is allowed to definitely disable the services of the smart card.**

**The CVM attribute specifies whether the applet is allowed to modify the try limit and the PIN code of the global CVM service.**

**The Registered Applications attribute specifies the Executable Files and application instances that have been installed on the card so far and their dependencies.**


**FDP\_ACF.1.2/SD** The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

**Runtime behavior rules defined by GlobalPlatform for:**

- loading (Section 9.3.5 of [GP]);**
- installation (Section 9.3.6 of [GP]);**
- extradition (Section 9.4.1 of [GP]);**
- registry update (Section 9.4.2 of [GP]);**
- content removal (Section 9.5 of [GP]).**

**FDP\_ACF.1.3/SD** The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules:

**Rule SD-1: A card administration request may be accepted only if the APDU command specifying the request is well-formed according to [GP221].**

	Reference	D1255596	Release	1.2p <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	Public	Pages	177

**Rule SD-2: A card administration request other than requesting card management data may be accepted only if the Card State is not TERMINATED.**

**Rule SD-3: The selection of an applet instance may be accepted only if the Applet State is not LOCKED.**

**Rule SD-4: The update of the life cycle state of an application instance is accepted only if the new state is consistent with its current life cycle state according to GlobalPlatform's life cycle rules (either coming from an APDU command or from an application instance through the GP API).**

**Rule SD-5: A request for installing an Executable Load File may be accepted only if there is enough resources for loading the Executable File, and no Executable File on the card has been already registered with the specified AID.**

**Rule SD-6: A Executable Load File block may be loaded only if all its previous blocks have been received in order, and there are sufficient resources for storing the new one.**

**Rule SD-7: A new applet instance may be created only if the Package Properties enables applet instantiation or multiple applet instances (if there is already an instance for that applet) but also if the AID specified for the applet instance is not already used for another applet or Executable File installed on the card, and the privileges specified for it are consistent with the GlobalPlatform rules specified in [VGP].**

**Rule SD-8: An Executable File may be deleted from the smart card only if it is not reachable from other Executable Files or application instances on the card.**

**Rule SD-9: An applet instance may be deleted from the card only it is not currently active on a logical channel, and none of the resources it has allocated is reachable from other Executable Files or Application instances installed on the card.**


**Rule SD-10: An applet instance may lock the card only if it has the Card Lock privilege.**

**Rule SD-11: An applet instance may terminate the card only if it has the Card Termination privilege.**

**Rule SD-12: An applet instance may unlock the CVM service or modify the CVM try limit or PIN code only if it has the CVM privilege.**

**Rule SD-13: A request involving the use of any of the Security domain keys is accepted only if the concerned keys are integer.**

**FDP\_ACF.1.4/SD** The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: **following rule: when at least one of the rules defined by GlobalPlatform does not hold.**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MSA.1/SD Management of security attributes

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/SD** The TSF shall enforce the **Security Domain access control policy** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **Any security attributes registered the GP Registry such as:**

**Application state of an application instance (1)**

**Default selected application (2)**

**Card Life cycle state (3)**

**Package properties (4)**

**Application association (5)**

to

**the Security Domain and the application instance itself (1)**

**the Security Domain (2&4)**

**the Security Domain and application with privilege (Card Lock or Terminated)(3).**

### FMT\_MSA.3/SD Static attribute initialisation

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/SD** The TSF shall enforce the **Security Domain access control policy (see application note)** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/SD** The TSF shall allow the **Issuer or authorized application provider** to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

*Refinement:*

Alternative initial values shall be at least as restrictive as the default values defined in FMT\_MSA.3.1.

The Default Selected application shall be the ISD.


The initial value of the Application State of an applet instance shall be SELECTABLE.

*Application note:*

When the TOE enters the life cycle phases under the scope of this Security Target, the Card State shall be at least SECURED. The initial value of the Application State of an applet instance shall be SELECTABLE. The initial Package Properties shall enable all card content management operations on the package.

Note: The Issuer or authorized application provider may assign the Default Select privilege to another application instance.



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## FMT\_SMF.1/SD Specification of Management Functions

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/SD** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:

**Restricting the properties associated to a given package**

**Registering a new Executable File or application instance in the GP registry.**

**Removing the specified entries from the GP registry when a DELETE command is received.**

**Unsetting it as the Default Select application and set this privilege to a new application instance.**

**Granting the privileges that the authorized entities (MNO, or Application Provider) specifies when a new application instance is installed.**

## FMT\_SMR.1/SD Security roles

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/SD** The TSF shall maintain the roles

**Issuer Security Domain**

**Supplementary Security Domain**

**Certification Authority Security Domain**

**Verification Authority Security Domain.**

**FMT\_SMR.1.2/SD** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.


*Secure Channel*

## FCO\_NRO.2/SC Enforced proof of origin

**FCO\_NRO.2.1/SC** The TSF shall enforce the generation of evidence of origin for transmitted **Executable load files** at all times.

**FCO\_NRO.2.2/SC** The TSF shall be able to relate the **identity** of the originator of the information, and the **Executable Load Files** of the information to which the evidence applies.

**FCO\_NRO.2.3/SC** The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of origin of information to **originator** given **Executable load files**.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FDP\_IFC.2/SC Complete information flow control

**FDP\_IFC.2.1/SC** The TSF shall enforce the **Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy** on

**the subjects S.CAD and S.SD, involved in the exchange of messages between the (U)SIM card and the CAD through a potentially unsafe communication channel**

**the information controlled by this policy is the card content management command, including personalization commands, in the APDUs sent to the card and their associated responses returned to the CAD.**

**The subjects covered by this policy are those involved in the exchange of messages between the card and the CAD through a potentially unsafe communication channel:**

- o An off-card subject that represents the authorized entities (S.BCV).**
- o Any application with the Security Domain privilege (S.CRD).**

**The information controlled by this policy is the one contained in the APDU commands sent to the card and their associated responses returned to the CAD or the mobile.**

and all operations that cause that information to flow to and from subjects covered by the SFP.

**FDP\_IFC.2.2/SC** The TSF shall ensure that all operations that cause any information in the TOE to flow to and from any subject in the TOE are covered by an information flow control SFP.

### FDP\_IFF.1/SC Simple security attributes

**FDP\_IFF.1.1/SC** The TSF shall enforce the **Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy** based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

**Subjects:**

**S.SD receiving the Card Content Management commands (through APDUs or APIs). This subject can be the ISD, an APSD or a CASD.**

**S.CAD the off-card entity that communicates with the S.SD.**

**Information:**


**load file, in case of application loading;**

**applications or SD privileges, in case of application installation or registry update;**

**personalization keys and/or certificates, in case of application or SD personalization.**

**The subjects have the following security attributes for SCP02 [GP]:**

**The Challenge is a random number generated by the subject in order to identify the current session.**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

The Cryptogram is a secret relative to the current smart card session that serves to authenticate the on- and off-card subjects. The cryptogram is derived from the challenges of both the card and the terminal.

The Key Set is a collection of three keys (Secure Channel Encryption Key (SENC), a Command Message Authentication Code Key (C-MAC) and a Data Encryption Key (DEK)) used to encrypt the Derivation Data in order to generate the session keys. It is identified by a key version number.

-- The Session Keys is a set of keys derived from KeySet and sequence counter to be used to verify the origin and integrity of the received message, and to decrypt their contents. This set is made of the following keys: \* Command Message Authentication Code Key (C-MAC session key); \* Encryption Key (SENC session key); \* Data Encryption Key (DEK session key).

-- The Command Security Level defined for the messages that the card receives through the secure channel. The possible security levels are: NO-SEC (clear text), C-AUTHENTICATED (authentication of the command's issuer), C-MAC (authentication of the issuer and integrity of the command), C-DEC (authentication of the issuer, integrity and confidentiality of the command).

-- The Initial Chaining Vector (ICV) is a value used to compute the MAC value of a message, which relates it to the previous messages of the current session.

The security attributes for SCP80 are:

CPL, CHL giving Information about the length of the received message and the length of the security header in that message;

SPI containing the security level applied to the incoming message, and response (if any), defining properties for message integrity and authentication, replay detection and sequence integrity and confidentiality;

TAR (Target Application Reference), indicating the application which the message is addressed to;

KIC and KID both contain information on the keys (key set number and the key algorithm) to be used when checking the security;


CNTR, a synchronization counter to avoid playing the same message several times;

PCNTR, padding information used only when the message is encrypted; and finally a signature, that can be either a basic CRC of the message or a signature involving keys.

**FDP\_IFF.1.2/SC** The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

**Runtime behavior rules defined by GlobalPlatform for:**

- loading (Section 9.3.5 of [GP]);**
- installation (Section 9.3.6 of [GP]);**
- extradition (Section 9.4.1 of [GP]);**
- registry update (Section 9.4.2 of [GP]);**

	Reference	D1255596	Release	1.2p <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	Public	Pages	177

SD personalization rules, pull and push models (Section 11 of [GP-UICC]).

**Rule IFF-1:** The SD may process a RECEIVE (INITIALIZE-UPDATE) operation only if the key set specified in the command exist in the SD and is integer.

**Rule IFF-2:** The ISD may process a RECEIVE (EXTERNAL-AUTHENTICATE) operation if the following conditions hold:

The cryptogram received from the off-card subject is equal to the cryptogram computed by the Security Domain.

The MAC attached to the message has been generated from the CMAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

**Rules IFF-3:** The ISD may process a RECEIVE (GET-DATA) operation if the following condition holds: If the command security level is at least C-MAC, the MAC attached to the message has been generated from the command using the C-MAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

**Rules IFF-4:**The ISD may process a RECEIVE (M) operation for any other command M different from the ones cited in the rules above if the following conditions hold:

The current security level is at least AUTHENTICATED.

If the command security level is at least C-MAC, the MAC attached to the message has been generated from the clear-text command using the C-MAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

**FDP\_IFF.1.3/SC** The TSF shall enforce the **no additional information flow control SFP rules**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.4/SC** The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: **no additional information flow control SFP rules**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.5/SC** The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules:

**When none of the conditions listed in the element FDP\_IFF.1.4 of this component hold and at least one of those listed in the element FDP\_IFF.1.2 does not hold.**

#### **FIA\_UID.1/SC Timing of identification**


**FIA\_UID.1.1/SC** The TSF shall allow

**application selection;**

**initializing a secure channel with the card;**

**requesting data that identifies the card or the Card Issuer;**

on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FIA\_UID.1.2/SC** The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

*Application note:*

The GlobalPlatform TSF mediated actions listed in [GP] such as selecting an application, requesting data, initializing, etc.

#### **FIA\_UAU.1/SC Timing of authentication**

**FIA\_UAU.1.1/SC** The TSF shall allow **the TSF mediated actions listed in FIA\_UID.1/SC** on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

**FIA\_UAU.1.2/SC** The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

#### **FIA\_UAU.4/SC Single-use authentication mechanisms**

**FIA\_UAU.4.1/SC** The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to **the authentication mechanism used to open a secure communication channel with the card.**


#### **FMT\_MSA.1/SC Management of security attributes**

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/SC** The TSF shall enforce the **Secure Channel Protocol (SCP) information flow control policy** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **(1) key set, Static keys, Command security Level, Secure channel protocol of a security domain (2) Session Keys, Sequence Counter and ICV of a session (for SCP02) (3) SPI, TAR,CNTR, PCNTR, signature (for SCP80) to (1 & 2 & 3) the actor associated with the security domain:**

**The Mobile Network Operator for ISD,  
The application Provider for SSD,  
The CA for CASD.**

*Application note:*

The authorized identified roles could be the card issuer (off-card) or a SD (on-card).

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MSA.3/SC Static attribute initialisation

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/SC** The TSF shall enforce the **Secure Channel Protocol (SCP) information flow control policy** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/SC** The TSF shall allow the **authorized entities (MNO, or Application Provider)** to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

*Refinement:*

Alternative initial values shall be at least as restrictive as the default values defined in FMT\_MSA.3.1.

### FMT\_SMF.1/SC Specification of Management Functions

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/SC** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:

**Management functions specified in GlobalPlatform specifications [GP]:**

**loading (Section 9.3.5 of [GP]);**

**installation (Section 9.3.6 of [GP]);**

**extradition (Section 9.4.1 of [GP]);**

**registry update (Section 9.4.2 of [GP]);**

**SD personalization rules, pull and push models (Section 11 of [GP-UICC]).**

**The management functions are:**

**(for SCP02)**

**Generating a new card challenge during the set up of a Secure Channel.**

**Generating the session keys for the Secure Channel from the specified static key set and its associated Sequence Counter.**

**Generating the card cryptogram from the host and card challenges and the session keys.**


**Increasing by one the Sequence Counter associated to the specified Key Set upon successful opening a Secure Channel.**

**Setting the security level of the Secure Channel as the authenticated authorized entities (MNO, or Application Provider) had specified during its set up.**

**Updating the current value of the ICV upon reception of a new message through the Secure Channel.**

**On request of the Issuer or authorized application provider, loading or replacing the static keys that the associated Security Domain uses to open a Secure Channel.**

**(For SCP80):**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**modifying parameter values (CPL, CHL, SPI, Kic, Kid,TAR,CNTR, PCNTR, signature),**

**Setting the security level of the Secure Channel as the authenticated authorized entities (MNO, or Application Provider) had specified during its set up,**

**On request of the Issuer or authorized application provider, loading or replacing the static keys that the associated Security Domain uses to open a Secure Channel.**

*Application note:*

All management functions related to SCP02 secure channel shall be relevant.

### **FTP\_ITC.1/SC Inter-TSF trusted channel**

**FTP\_ITC.1.1/SC** The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.


**FTP\_ITC.1.2/SC** The TSF shall permit **another trusted IT product** to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

**FTP\_ITC.1.3/SC** The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for **all card management functions:**

- loading or deleting an Executable Load file;**
- installing or removing an application instance;**
- extrading an Executable Load file or an application instance;**
- registry update;**
- Loading or removing a KeySet;**
- SD personalization;**
- changing the Application Life Cycle or card Life Cycle;**

#### **6.1.2 Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

This section states the security functional requirements for the Java Card System - Open configuration. For readability and for compatibility with the original Java Card System Protection Profile Collection - Standard 2.2 Configuration [PP/0305], requirements are arranged into groups. All the groups defined in the table below apply to this Protection Profile.


	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Group	Description
Core with Logical Channels ( <i>CoreG_LC</i> )	The CoreG_LC contains the requirements concerning the runtime environment of the Java Card System implementing logical channels. This includes the firewall policy and the requirements related to the Java Card API. Logical channels are a Java Card specification version 2.2 feature. This group is the union of requirements from the Core ( <i>CoreG</i> ) and the Logical channels ( <i>LCG</i> ) groups defined in [PP/0305] (cf. Java Card System Protection Profile Collection [PP JCS]).
Installation ( <i>InstG</i> )	The InstG contains the security requirements concerning the installation of post-issuance applications. It does not address card management issues in the broad sense, but only those security aspects of the installation procedure that are related to applet execution.
Applet deletion ( <i>ADELG</i> )	The ADELG contains the security requirements for erasing installed applets from the card, a feature introduced in Java Card specification version 2.2.
Remote Method Invocation (RMI)	The RMIG contains the security requirements for the remote method invocation feature, which provides a new protocol of communication between the terminal and the applets. This was introduced in Java Card specification version 2.2.
Object deletion ( <i>ODELG</i> )	The ODELG contains the security requirements for the object deletion capability. This provides a safe memory recovering mechanism. This is a Java Card specification version 2.2 feature.
Secure carrier ( <i>CarG</i> )	The CarG group contains minimal requirements for secure downloading of applications on the card. This group contains the security requirements for preventing, in those configurations that do not support on-card static or dynamic bytecode verification, the installation of a package that has not been bytecode verified, or that has been modified after bytecode verification.

Subjects are active components of the TOE that (essentially) act on the behalf of users. The users of the TOE include people or institutions (like the applet developer, the card issuer, the verification authority), hardware (like the CAD where the card is inserted or the PCD) and software components (like the application packages installed on the card). Some of the users may just be aliases for other users. For instance, the verification authority in charge of the bytecode verification of the applications may be just an alias for the card issuer.


Subjects (prefixed with an "S") are described in the following table:



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Subject	Description
S.ADEL	The applet deletion manager which also acts on behalf of the card issuer. It may be an applet ([JCRE222], §11), but its role asks anyway for a specific treatment from the security viewpoint. This subject is unique and is involved in the ADEL security policy defined in §7.1.3.1.
S.APPLET	Any applet instance.
S.BCV	The bytecode verifier (BCV), which acts on behalf of the verification authority who is in charge of the bytecode verification of the packages. This subject is involved in the PACKAGE LOADING security policy defined in §7.1.7.
S.CAD	The CAD represents the actor that requests, by issuing commands to the card, for RMI services. It also plays the role of the off-card entity that communicates with the S.INSTALLER.
S.INSTALLER	The installer is the on-card entity which acts on behalf of the card issuer. This subject is involved in the loading of packages and installation of applets.
S.JCRE	The runtime environment under which Java programs in a smart card are executed.
S.JCVM	The bytecode interpreter that enforces the firewall at runtime.
S.LOCAL	Operand stack of a JCVM frame, or local variable of a JCVM frame containing an object or an array of references.
S.MEMBER	Any object's field, static field or array position.
S.PACKAGE	A package is a namespace within the Java programming language that may contain classes and interfaces, and in the context of Java Card technology, it defines either a user library, or one or several applets.

Objects (prefixed with an "O") are described in the following table:


	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

Object	Description
O.APPLET	Any installed applet, its code and data.
O.CODE_PKG	The code of a package, including all linking information. On the Java Card platform, a package is the installation unit.
O.JAVAOBJECT	Java class instance or array. It should be noticed that KEYS, PIN, arrays and applet instances are specific objects in the Java programming language.
O.REMOTE_MTHD	A method of a remote interface.
O.REMOTE_OBJ	A remote object is an instance of a class that implements one (or more) remote interfaces. A remote interface is one that extends, directly or indirectly, the interface java.rmi.Remote ([JCAP1222]).
O.RMI_SERVICE	These are instances of the class javacardx.rmi.RMIService. They are the objects that actually process the RMI services.
O.ROR	A remote object reference. It provides information concerning: (i) the identification of a remote object and (ii) the Implementation class of the object or the interfaces implemented by the class of the object. This is the object's information to which the CAD can access.


Information (prefixed with an "I") is described in the following table:

Information	Description
I.APDU	Any APDU sent to or from the card through the communication channel.
I.DATA	JCVM Reference Data: objectref addresses of APDU buffer, JCRE-owned instances of APDU class and byte array for install method.
I.RORD	Remote object reference descriptors which provide information concerning: (i) the identification of the remote object and (ii) the implementation class of the object or the interfaces implemented by the class of the object. The descriptor is the only object's information to which the CAD can access.

Security attributes linked to these subjects, objects and information are described in the following table with their values:

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


Security attribute	Description/Value
Active Applets	The set of the active applets' AIDs. An active applet is an applet that is selected on at least one of the logical channels.
Applet Selection Status	"Selected" or "Deselected".
Applet's version number	The version number of an applet (package) indicated in the export file.
Class	Identifies the implementation class of the remote object.
Context	Package AID or "Java Card RE".
Currently Active Context	Package AID or "Java Card RE".
Dependent package AID	Allows the retrieval of the Package AID and Applet's version number ([JCVM222], §4.5.2).
ExportedInfo	Boolean (indicates whether the remote object is exportable or not).
Identifier	The Identifier of a remote object or method is a number that uniquely identifies the remote object or method, respectively.
LC Selection Status	Multiselectable, Non-multiselectable or "None".
LifeTime	CLEAR_ON_DESELECT or PERSISTENT (*).
Owner	The Owner of an object is either the applet instance that created the object or the package (library) where it has been defined (these latter objects can only be arrays that initialize static fields of the package). The owner of a remote object is the applet instance that created the object.
Package AID	The AID of each package indicated in the export file.
Registered Applets	The set of AID of the applet instances registered on the card.
Remote	An object is Remote if it is an instance of a class that directly or indirectly implements the interface java.rmi.Remote.
Resident Packages	The set of AIDs of the packages already loaded on the card.
Returned References	The set of remote object references that have been sent to the CAD during the applet selection session. This attribute is implementation dependent.
Selected Applet Context	Package AID or "None".
Sharing	Standards, SIO, Java Card RE entry point or global array.

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


Security attribute	Description/Value
Static References	Static fields of a package may contain references to objects. The Static References attribute records those references.

(\*) Transient objects of type CLEAR\_ON\_RESET behave like persistent objects in that they can be accessed only when the Currently Active Context is the object's context.

Operations (prefixed with "OP") are described in the following table. Each operation has parameters given between brackets, among which there is the "accessed object", the first one, when applicable. Parameters may be seen as security attributes that are under the control of the subject performing the operation.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Operation	Description
OP.ARRAY_ACCESS(O.JAVAOBJECT, field)	Read/Write an array component.
OP.CREATE(Sharing, LifeTime) (*)	Creation of an object (new or makeTransient call).
OP.DELETE_APPLET(O.APPLET,...)	Delete an installed applet and its objects, either logically or physically.
OP.DELETE_PCKG(O.CODE_PKG,...)	Delete a package, either logically or physically.
OP.DELETE_PCKG_APPLET(O.CODE_PKG,...)	Delete a package and its installed applets, either logically or physically.
OP.GET_ROR(O.APPLET,...)	Retrieves the initial remote object reference of a RMI based applet. This reference is the seed which the CAD client application needs to begin remote method invocations.
OP.INSTANCE_FIELD(O.JAVAOBJECT, field)	Read/Write a field of an instance of a class in the Java programming language.
OP.INVK_VIRTUAL(O.JAVAOBJECT, method, arg1,...)	Invoke a virtual method (either on a class instance or an array object).
OP.INVK_INTERFACE(O.JAVAOBJECT, method, arg1,...)	Invoke an interface method.
OP.INVOKE(O.RMI_SERVICE,...)	Requests a remote method invocation on the remote object.
OP.JAVA(...)	Any access in the sense of [JCRE222], §6.2.8. It stands for one of the operations OP.ARRAY_ACCESS, OP.INSTANCE_FIELD, OP.INVK_VIRTUAL, OP.INVK_INTERFACE, OP.THROW, OP.TYPE_ACCESS.
OP.PUT(S1,S2,I)	Transfer a piece of information I from S1 to S2.
OP.RET_RORD(S.JCRE,S.CAD,I.RORD)	Send a remote object reference descriptor to the CAD.
OP.THROW(O.JAVAOBJECT)	Throwing of an object (athrow, see [JCRE222], §6.2.8.7).
OP.TYPE_ACCESS(O.JAVAOBJECT, class)	Invoke checkcast or instanceof on an object in order to access to classes (standard or shareable interfaces objects).

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

(\*) For this operation, there is no accessed object. This rule enforces that shareable transient objects are not allowed. For instance, during the creation of an object, the JavaCardClass attribute's value is chosen by the creator.

### 6.1.2.1 CoreG\_LC Security Functional Requirements

This group is focused on the main security policy of the Java Card System, known as the firewall.

#### Firewall Policy

#### **FDP\_ACC.2/FIREWALL Complete access control**

**FDP\_ACC.2.1/FIREWALL** The TSF shall enforce the **FIREWALL access control SFP** on **S.PACKAGE, S.JCRE, S.JCVM, O.JAVAOBJECT** and all operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP.

*Refinement:*


The operations involved in the policy are:

OP.CREATE,  
 OP.INVK\_INTERFACE,  
 OP.INVK\_VIRTUAL,  
 OP.JAVA,  
 OP.THROW,  
 OP.TYPE\_ACCESS.

**FDP\_ACC.2.2/FIREWALL** The TSF shall ensure that all operations between any subject controlled by the TSF and any object controlled by the TSF are covered by an access control SFP.

*Application note:*

It should be noticed that accessing array's components of a static array, and more generally fields and methods of static objects, is an access to the corresponding O.JAVAOBJECT.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_ACF.1/FIREWALL Security attribute based access control**

**FDP\_ACF.1.1/FIREWALL** The TSF shall enforce the **FIREWALL** access control **SFP** to objects based on the following:

Subject/Object	Security attributes
<b>S.PACKAGE</b>	<b>LC Selection Status</b>
<b>S.JCVM</b>	<b>Active Applets, Currently Active Context</b>
<b>S.JCRE</b>	<b>Selected Applet Context</b>
<b>O.JAVAOBJECT</b>	<b>Sharing, Context, LifeTime</b>

**FDP\_ACF.1.2/FIREWALL** The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

**R.JAVA.1 ([JCRE222], §6.2.8): S.PACKAGE may freely perform OP.ARRAY\_ACCESS, OP.INSTANCE\_FIELD, OP.INVK\_VIRTUAL, OP.INVK\_INTERFACE, OP.THROW or OP.TYPE\_ACCESS upon any O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute has value "JCRE entry point" or "global array".**


**R.JAVA.2 ([JCRE222], §6.2.8): S.PACKAGE may freely perform OP.ARRAY\_ACCESS, OP.INSTANCE\_FIELD, OP.INVK\_VIRTUAL, OP.INVK\_INTERFACE or OP.THROW upon any O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute has value "Standard" and whose Lifetime attribute has value "PERSISTENT" only if O.JAVAOBJECT's Context attribute has the same value as the active context.**

**R.JAVA.3 ([JCRE222], §6.2.8.10): S.PACKAGE may perform OP.TYPE\_ACCESS upon an O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute has value "SIO" only if O.JAVAOBJECT is being cast into (checkcast) or is being verified as being an instance of (instanceof) an interface that extends the Shareable interface.**

**R.JAVA.4 ([JCRE222], §6.2.8.6): S.PACKAGE may perform OP.INVK\_INTERFACE upon an O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute has the value "SIO", and whose Context attribute has the value "Package AID", only if the invoked interface method extends the Shareable interface and one of the following conditions applies:**

- a) The value of the attribute Selection Status of the package whose AID is "Package AID" is "Multiselectable",
- b) The value of the attribute Selection Status of the package whose AID is "Package AID" is "Non-multiselectable", and either "Package AID" is the value of the currently selected applet or otherwise "Package AID" does not occur in the attribute Active Applets.

**R.JAVA.5: S.PACKAGE may perform OP.CREATE only if the value of the Sharing parameter is "Standard".**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_ACF.1.3/FIREWALL** The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules:

- 1) The subject S.JCRE can freely perform OP.JAVA("") and OP.CREATE, with the exception given in FDP\_ACF.1.4/FIREWALL, provided it is the Currently Active Context.**
- 2) The only means that the subject S.JCVM shall provide for an application to execute native code is the invocation of a Java Card API method (through OP.INVK\_INTERFACE or OP.INVK\_VIRTUAL).**

**FDP\_ACF.1.4/FIREWALL** The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules:

- 1) Any subject with OP.JAVA upon an O.JAVAOBJECT whose LifeTime attribute has value "CLEAR\_ON\_DESELECT" if O.JAVAOBJECT's Context attribute is not the same as the Selected Applet Context.**
- 2) Any subject attempting to create an object by the means of OP.CREATE and a "CLEAR\_ON\_DESELECT" LifeTime parameter if the active context is not the same as the Selected Applet Context.**

*Application note:*

FDP\_ACF.1.4/FIREWALL:

The deletion of applets may render some O.JAVAOBJECT inaccessible, and the Java Card RE may be in charge of this aspect. This can be done, for instance, by ensuring that references to objects belonging to a deleted application are considered as a null reference. Such a mechanism is implementation-dependent.


In the case of an array type, fields are components of the array ([JVM], §2.14, §2.7.7), as well as the length; the only methods of an array object are those inherited from the Object class.

The Sharing attribute defines four categories of objects:

- Standard ones, whose both fields and methods are under the firewall policy,
- Shareable interface Objects (SIO), which provide a secure mechanism for inter-applet communication,
- JCRE entry points (Temporary or Permanent), who have freely accessible methods but protected fields,
- Global arrays, having both unprotected fields (including components; refer to JavaCardClass discussion above) and methods.

When a new object is created, it is associated with the Currently Active Context. But the object is owned by the applet instance within the Currently Active Context when the object is instantiated ([JCRE222], §6.1.3). An object is owned by an applet instance, by the JCRE or by the package library where it has been defined (these latter objects can only be arrays that initialize static fields of packages).



	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

([JCRE222], Glossary) Selected Applet Context. The Java Card RE keeps track of the currently selected Java Card applet. Upon receiving a SELECT command with this applet's AID, the Java Card RE makes this applet the Selected Applet Context. The Java Card RE sends all APDU commands to the Selected Applet Context.

While the expression "Selected Applet Context" refers to a specific installed applet, the relevant aspect to the policy is the context (package AID) of the selected applet. In this policy, the "Selected Applet Context" is the AID of the selected package.

([JCRE222], §6.1.2.1) At any point in time, there is only one active context within the Java Card VM (this is called the Currently Active Context).

It should be noticed that the invocation of static methods (or access to a static field) is not considered by this policy, as there are no firewall rules. They have no effect on the active context as well and the "acting package" is not the one to which the static method belongs to in this case.

It should be noticed that the Java Card platform, version 2.2.x and version 3 Classic Edition, introduces the possibility for an applet instance to be selected on multiple logical channels at the same time, or accepting other applets belonging to the same package being selected simultaneously. These applets are referred to as multiselectable applets. Applets that belong to a same package are either all multiselectable or not ([JCV222], §2.2.5). Therefore, the selection mode can be regarded as an attribute of packages. No selection mode is defined for a library package.


An applet instance will be considered an active applet instance if it is currently selected in at least one logical channel. An applet instance is the currently selected applet instance only if it is processing the current command. There can only be one currently selected applet instance at a given time. ([JCRE222], §4).

## FDP\_IFC.1/JCVM Subset information flow control

**FDP\_IFC.1.1/JCVM** The TSF shall enforce the **JCVM information flow control SFP** on **S.JCVM, S.LOCAL, S.MEMBER, I.DATA and OP.PUT(S1, S2, I)**.

*Application note:*

It should be noticed that references of temporary Java Card RE entry points, which cannot be stored in class variables, instance variables or array components, are transferred from the internal memory of the Java Card RE (TSF data) to some stack through specific APIs (Java Card RE owned exceptions) or Java Card RE invoked methods (such as the process(APDU apdu)); these are causes of OP.PUT(S1,S2,I) operations as well.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_IFF.1/JCVM Simple security attributes**

**FDP\_IFF.1.1/JCVM** The TSF shall enforce the **JCVM information flow control SFP** based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

<b>Subjects</b>	<b>Security attributes</b>
<b>S.JCVM</b>	<b>Currently Active Context</b>

**FDP\_IFF.1.2/JCVM** The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

**An operation OP.PUT(S1, S.MEMBER, I.DATA) is allowed if and only if the Currently Active Context is "Java Card RE";  
other OP.PUT operations are allowed regardless of the Currently Active Context's value.**

**FDP\_IFF.1.3/JCVM** The TSF shall enforce the **[No additional rules]**.


**FDP\_IFF.1.4/JCVM** The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: **[No additional rules]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.5/JCVM** The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules: **[No additional rules]**.

*Application note:*

The storage of temporary Java Card RE-owned objects references is runtime-enforced ([JCRE222], §6.2.8.1-3).

It should be noticed that this policy essentially applies to the execution of bytecode. Native methods, the Java Card RE itself and possibly some API methods can be granted specific rights or limitations through the FDP\_IFF.1.3/JCVM to FDP\_IFF.1.5/JCVM elements. The way the Java Card virtual machine manages the transfer of values on the stack and local variables (returned values, uncaught exceptions) from and to internal registers is implementation-dependent. For instance, a returned reference, depending on the implementation of the stack frame, may transit through an internal register prior to being pushed on the stack of the invoker. The returned bytecode would cause more than one OP.PUT operation under this scheme.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### **FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS Subset residual information protection**

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/OBJECTS** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **allocation of the resource to** the following objects: **class instances and arrays**.

*Application note:*

The semantics of the Java programming language requires for any object field and array position to be initialized with default values when the resource is allocated [JVM], §2.5.1.

### **FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE Management of security attributes**

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/JCRE** The TSF shall enforce the **FIREWALL access control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **Selected Applet Context to the Java Card RE**.

*Application note:*


The modification of the Selected Applet Context should be performed in accordance with the rules given in [JCRE222], §4 and [JVM222], §3.4.

### **FMT\_MSA.1/JCVM Management of security attributes**

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/JCVM** The TSF shall enforce the **FIREWALL access control SFP and the JCVM information flow control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **Currently Active Context and Active Applets to the Java Card VM (S.JCVM)**.

*Application note:*

The modification of the Currently Active Context should be performed in accordance with the rules given in [JCRE222], §4 and [JVM222], §3.4.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## FMT\_MSA.2/FIREWALL\_JCVM Secure security attributes

**FMT\_MSA.2.1/FIREWALL\_JCVM** The TSF shall ensure that only secure values are accepted for **all the security attributes of subjects and objects defined in the FIREWALL access control SFP and the JCVM information flow control SFP.**

*Application note:*

The following rules are given as examples only. For instance, the last two rules are motivated by the fact that the Java Card API defines only transient arrays factory methods. Future versions may allow the creation of transient objects belonging to arbitrary classes; such evolution will naturally change the range of "secure values" for this component.

The Context attribute of an O.JAVAOBJECT must correspond to that of an installed applet or be "Java Card RE".

An O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute is a Java Card RE entry point or a global array necessarily has "Java Card RE" as the value for its Context security attribute.

An O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute value is a global array necessarily has "array of primitive type" as a JavaCardClass security attribute's value.

Any O.JAVAOBJECT whose Sharing attribute value is not "Standard" has a PERSISTENT-LifeTime attribute's value.

Any O.JAVAOBJECT whose LifeTime attribute value is not PERSISTENT has an array type as JavaCardClass attribute's value.

## FMT\_MSA.3/FIREWALL Static attribute initialisation


**FMT\_MSA.3.1/FIREWALL** The TSF shall enforce the **FIREWALL access control SFP** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/FIREWALL [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall not allow **any role** to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

*Application note:*

### FMT\_MSA.3.1/FIREWALL

Objects' security attributes of the access control policy are created and initialized at the creation of the object or the subject. Afterwards, these attributes are no longer mutable (FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE). At the creation of an object (OP.CREATE), the newly created object, assuming that the FIREWALL access control SFP permits the operation, gets its Lifetime and Sharing attributes from the parameters of the operation; on the contrary, its Context attribute has a default value, which is its creator's Context attribute and AID respectively ([JCRE222], §6.1.3). There is one default value for the Selected Applet Context that is the default applet identifier's Context, and one default value for the Currently Active Context that is "Java Card RE".

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

The knowledge of which reference corresponds to a temporary entry point object or a global array and which does not is solely available to the Java Card RE (and the Java Card virtual machine).

#### FMT\_MSA.3.2/FIREWALL

The intent is that none of the identified roles has privileges with regard to the default values of the security attributes. It should be noticed that creation of objects is an operation controlled by the FIREWALL access control SFP. The operation shall fail anyway if the created object would have had security attributes whose value violates FMT\_MSA.2.1/FIREWALL\_JCVM.

### FMT\_MSA.3/JCVM Static attribute initialisation

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/JCVM** The TSF shall enforce the **JCVM information flow control SFP** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/JCVM [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall not allow **any role** to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

### FMT\_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

**FMT\_SMF.1.1** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:  
**modify the Currently Active Context, the Selected Applet Context and the Active Applets.**

### FMT\_SMR.1 Security roles


**FMT\_SMR.1.1** The TSF shall maintain the roles:  
**Java Card RE (JCRE),**  
**Java Card VM (JCVM).**

**FMT\_SMR.1.2** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

#### Application Programming Interface

The following SFRs are related to the Java Card API.

The whole set of cryptographic algorithms is generally not implemented because of limited memory resources and/or limitations due to exportation. Therefore, the following requirements only apply to the implemented subset.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

It should be noticed that the execution of the additional native code is not within the TSF. Nevertheless, access to API native methods from the Java Card System is controlled by TSF because there is no difference between native and interpreted methods in their interface or invocation mechanism.

### FCS\_CKM.1/DES Cryptographic key generation

**FCS\_CKM.1.1/DES** The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm **TDES Key generation** and specified cryptographic key sizes **112 bits for TDES 2 keys, 168 bits for TDES 3 keys** that meet the following: **none (random numbers generation)**.

*Application note:*

The keys can be generated and diversified in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in classes KeyBuilder.

### FCS\_CKM.1/AES Cryptographic key generation

**FCS\_CKM.1.1/AES** The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm **AES Key generation** and specified cryptographic key sizes **128 bits for AES key** that meet the following: **none (random numbers generation)**.

*Application note:*


The keys can be generated and diversified in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in classes KeyBuilder.

### FCS\_CKM.1/RSA Cryptographic key generation

**FCS\_CKM.1.1/RSA** The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [**see application note**] and specified cryptographic key sizes [**1536 to 2048 bits**]with **CRT** that meet the following: [**see application note**].

*Application note:*

The keys can be generated and diversified in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in classes KeyBuilder and KeyPair (at least Session key generation).

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### **FCS\_CKM.2/DES Cryptographic key distribution**

**FCS\_CKM.2.1/DES** The TSF shall distribute cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

Command SetKEY that meets [JCAPI222] standard.

### **FCS\_CKM.2/AES Cryptographic key distribution**

**FCS\_CKM.2.1/AES** The TSF shall distribute cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

Command SetKEY that meets [JCAPI222] standard.

### **FCS\_CKM.2/RSA Cryptographic key distribution**

**FCS\_CKM.2.1/RSA** The TSF shall distribute cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*


Command SetKEY that meets [JCAPI222] standard.

### **FCS\_CKM.3/DES Cryptographic key access**

**FCS\_CKM.3.1/DES** The TSF shall perform (**see application note**) in accordance with a specified cryptographic key access method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

The keys can be accessed in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in class Key.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FCS\_CKM.3/AES Cryptographic key access

**FCS\_CKM.3.1/AES** The TSF shall perform (**see application note**) in accordance with a specified cryptographic key access method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

The keys can be accessed in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in class Key.

### FCS\_CKM.3/RSA Cryptographic key access

**FCS\_CKM.3.1/RSA** The TSF shall perform (**see application note**) in accordance with a specified cryptographic key access method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

The keys can be accessed in accordance with [JCAPI222] standard in class Key.

### FCS\_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

**FCS\_CKM.4.1** The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key destruction method (**see application note**) that meets the following: (**see application note**).

*Application note:*

The keys are reset as specified in [JCAPI222] Key class, with the method clearKey(). Any access to a cleared key for ciphering or signing shall throw an exception.


### FCS\_COP.1/DES\_CIPHER Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/DES\_CIPHER** The TSF shall perform [**encryption and decryption of applet instance's data**] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [**Triple DES either in CBC or ECB mode and with padding scheme (NOPAD,ISO9797 or PKCS#5)**] and cryptographic key sizes [**112 or 168 bits**] that meet the following: [**FIPS PUB 46-3, FIPS PUB 81, ISO 9797, according to JCAPI222**].

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FCS\_COP.1/DES\_MAC\_COMP Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/DES\_MAC\_COMP** The TSF shall perform **[MAC generation or verification of applet instance's data]** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm **[Triple DES in CBC mode and with or without padding generating MAC on 4-bytes or 8-bytes]** and cryptographic key sizes **[112 or 168 bits]** that meet the following: **[FIPS PUB 46-3, FIPS PUB 81, ISO 9797, according to JCAPI222]**.

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

### FCS\_COP.1/AES\_CIPHER Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/AES\_CIPHER** The TSF shall perform **[encryption and decryption of applet instance's data]** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm **[AES (128 bits) either in CBC or ECB mode without padding]** and cryptographic key sizes **[128 bits]** that meet the following: **[FIPS PUB 197, FIPS PUB 81, ISO 9797, according to JCAPI222]**.

*Application note:*


The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

### FCS\_COP.1/AES\_MAC\_COMP Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/AES\_MAC\_COMP** The TSF shall perform **[MAC generation or verification of applet instance's data]** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm **[AES (128bits) in CBC mode and with or without padding generating MAC on 4-bytes or 8-bytes]** and cryptographic key sizes **[112 or 168 bits]** that meet the following: **[FIPS PUB 197, FIPS PUB 81, ISO 9797, according to JCAPI222]**.

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FCS\_COP.1/RSA\_SIGN Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/RSA\_SIGN** The TSF shall perform [**signature generation or verification of applet instance's data**] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [**RSA with CRT in mode ISO 14888 with padding scheme (ISO9796 or PKCS #1)**] and cryptographic key sizes [**1536 to 2048 bits**] that meet the following: [**PKCS #1 Version 2.1**].

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

### FCS\_COP.1/RSA\_CIPHER Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/RSA\_CIPHER** The TSF shall perform [**encryption or decryption of applet instance's data**] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [**RSA with CRT**] and cryptographic key sizes [**1536 to 2048 bits**] that meet the following: [**PKCS #1 Version 2.1**].

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI22] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

### FCS\_COP.1/HMAC Cryptographic operation


**FCS\_COP.1.1/HMAC** The TSF shall perform [**computation of a hash value for applet instance's data**] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [**HMAC, HMAC MD5, HMAC SHA-384 (48 bytes) or HMAC SHA-256 (32 bytes), HMAC SHA-224 and HMAC SHA-1**] and cryptographic key sizes [**4-64 bytes**] that meet the following: [**rfc2104 & 2085 & 3874**].

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

### FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT Subset residual information protection

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/ABORT** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

following objects: **any reference to an object instance created during an aborted transaction.**

*Application note:*

The events that provoke the de-allocation of a transient object are described in [JCRE301], §5.1.

#### **FDP\_RIP.1/APDU Subset residual information protection**

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/APDU** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **allocation of the resource to** the following objects: **the APDU buffer.**

*Application note:*


The allocation of a resource to the APDU buffer is typically performed as the result of a call to the process() method of an applet.

#### **FDP\_RIP.1/bArray Subset residual information protection**

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/bArray** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the following objects: **the bArray object.**

*Application note:*

A resource is allocated to the bArray object when a call to an applet's install() method is performed. There is no conflict with FDP\_ROL.1 here because of the bounds on the rollback mechanism (FDP\_ROL.1.2/FIREWALL): the scope of the rollback does not extend outside the execution of the install() method, and the de-allocation occurs precisely right after the return of it.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FDP\_RIP.1/KEYS Subset residual information protection

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/KEYS** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the following objects: **the cryptographic buffer (D.CRYPTO)**.

*Application note:*

The javacard.security & javacardx.crypto packages do provide secure interfaces to the cryptographic buffer in a transparent way. See javacard.security.KeyBuilder and Key interface of [JCAPI222].

### FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT Subset residual information protection


**FDP\_RIP.1.1/TRANSIENT** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the following objects: **any transient object**.

*Application note:*

The events that provoke the de-allocation of any transient object are described in [JCRE301], §5.1 and §3.6.1.

The clearing of CLEAR\_ON\_DESELECT objects is not necessarily performed when the owner of the objects is deselected. In the presence of multiselectable applet instances, CLEAR\_ON\_DESELECT memory segments may be attached to applets that are active in different logical channels. Multiselectable applet instances within a same package must share the transient memory segment if they are concurrently active ([JCRE301], §4.2.

Moreover in [JCRE301]§3.6.1, Transient data of CLEAR\_ON\_DESELECT objects associated with each applet instance that was active on a logical channel over the contactless I/O interface and that does not have an applet instance from the same package active on any logical channel over the contacted I/O interface, is reset to the default value.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL Basic rollback

**FDP\_ROL.1.1/FIREWALL** The TSF shall enforce **the FIREWALL access control SFP and the JCVM information flow control SFP** to permit the rollback of the operations **OP.JAVA** and **OP.CREATE** on the **object O.JAVAOBJECT**.

**FDP\_ROL.1.2/FIREWALL** The TSF shall permit operations to be rolled back within the **scope of a select(), deselect(), process(), install() or uninstall() call, notwithstanding the restrictions given in [JCRE222], §7.7, within the bounds of the Commit Capacity ([JCRE222], §7.8), and those described in [JCAPI222]**.

*Application note:*

Transactions are a service offered by the APIs to applets. It is also used by some APIs to guarantee the atomicity of some operation. This mechanism is either implemented in Java Card platform or relies on the transaction mechanism offered by the underlying platform. Some operations of the API are not conditionally updated, as documented in [JCAPI222] (see for instance, PIN-blocking, PIN-checking, update of Transient objects).

### Card Security Management


## FAU\_ARP.1 Security alarms

**FAU\_ARP.1.1** The TSF shall take **one of the following actions:**  
**throw an exception,**  
**lock the card session,**  
**reinitialize the Java Card System and its data,**  
upon detection of a potential security violation.

*Refinement:*

The "potential security violation" stands for one of the following events:

- CAP file inconsistency,
- typing error in the operands of a bytecode,
- applet life cycle inconsistency,
- card tearing (unexpected removal of the Card out of the CAD) and power failure,
- abort of a transaction in an unexpected context, (see abortTransaction(), [JCAPI222] and ([JCRE222], §7.6.2)
- violation of the Firewall or JCVM SFPs,
- unavailability of resources,
- array overflow.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FDP\_SDI.2 Stored data integrity monitoring and action

**FDP\_SDI.2.1** The TSF shall monitor user data stored in containers controlled by the TSF for **integrity errors** on all objects, based on the following attributes: **integrityCheckData**.

**FDP\_SDI.2.2** Upon detection of a data integrity error, the TSF shall **shall increase a counter of integrity error event and mute the card if counter is greater than max value**.

*Application note:*

The following data persistently stored by TOE have a integrity check data security attribute:

\* PIN (objects instance of class OwnerPin), \* Key (i.e. objects instance of classes implemented the interface Key), \* package.

### FPR\_UNO.1 Unobservability

**FPR\_UNO.1.1** The TSF shall ensure that **[any user]** are unable to observe the operation **[read, write, cryptographic operations]** on **[PIN,Key]** by **[any other user or subject]**.

*Application note:*


Although it is not required in [JCRE222] specifications, the non-observability of operations on sensitive information such as keys appears as impossible to circumvent in the smart card world.

### FPT\_FLS.1/JCS Failure with preservation of secure state

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/JCS** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **those associated to the potential security violations described in FAU\_ARP.1**.

*Application note:*

The Java Card RE Context is the Current context when the Java Card VM begins running after a card reset ([JCRE222], §6.2.3) or after a proximity card (PICC) activation sequence ([JCRE222]). Behavior of the TOE on power loss and reset is described in [JCRE222], §3.6 and §7.1. Behavior of the TOE on RF signal loss is described in [JCRE222], §3.6.1.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FPT\_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency

**FPT\_TDC.1.1** The TSF shall provide the capability to consistently interpret **the CAP files, the bytecode and its data arguments** when shared between the TSF and another trusted IT product.

**FPT\_TDC.1.2** The TSF shall use **the rules defined in [JCVM222] specification, the API tokens defined in the export files of reference implementation,** when interpreting the TSF data from another trusted IT product.

*Application note:*

Concerning the interpretation of data between the TOE and the underlying Java Card platform, it is assumed that the TOE is developed consistently with the SCP functions, including memory management, I/O functions and cryptographic functions.

#### AID Management

### FIA\_ATD.1/AID User attribute definition

**FIA\_ATD.1.1/AID** The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to individual users:

**Package AID,  
Applet's version number,  
Registered applet AID,  
Applet Selection Status ([JCVM222], §6.5).**

*Refinement:*


"Individual users" stand for applets.

### FIA\_UID.2/AID User identification before any action

**FIA\_UID.2.1/AID** The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

*Application note:*

By users here it must be understood the ones associated to the packages (or applets) that act as subjects of policies. In the Java Card System, every action is always performed by an identified user interpreted here as the currently selected applet or the package that is the subject's owner. Means of identification are provided during the loading procedure of the package and the registration of applet instances.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

The role Java Card RE defined in FMT\_SMR.1 is attached to an IT security function rather than to a "user" of the CC terminology. The Java Card RE does not "identify" itself to the TOE, but it is part of it.

### FIA\_USB.1/AID User-subject binding

**FIA\_USB.1.1/AID** The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user: **Package AID, active context.**

**FIA\_USB.1.2/AID** The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users: **Package AID are defined with associated value during loading and with context identifier.**

**FIA\_USB.1.3/AID** The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users: **[None].**

*Application note:*

The user is the applet and the subject is the S.PACKAGE. The subject security attribute "Context" shall hold the user security attribute "package AID".

### FMT\_MTD.1/JCRE Management of TSF data


**FMT\_MTD.1.1/JCRE** The TSF shall restrict the ability to **modify** the **list of registered applets' AIDs** to **the JCRE.**

*Application note:*

The installer and the Java Card RE manage other TSF data such as the applet life cycle or CAP files, but this management is implementation specific. Objects in the Java programming language may also try to query AIDs of installed applets through the lookupAID(...) API method.

The installer, applet deletion manager or even the card manager may be granted the right to modify the list of registered applets' AIDs in specific implementations (possibly needed for installation and deletion; see #.DELETION and #.INSTALL).



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MTD.3/JCRE Secure TSF data

**FMT\_MTD.3.1/JCRE** The TSF shall ensure that only secure values are accepted for **the registered applets' AIDs**.

#### 6.1.2.2 InstG Security Functional Requirements

This group consists of the SFRs related to the installation of the applets, which addresses security aspects outside the runtime. The installation of applets is a critical phase, which lies partially out of the boundaries of the firewall, and therefore requires specific treatment. In this PP, loading a package or installing an applet modeled as importation of user data (that is, user application's data) with its security attributes (such as the parameters of the applet used in the firewall rules).

### FDP\_ITC.2/Installer Import of user data with security attributes

**FDP\_ITC.2.1/Installer** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** when importing user data, controlled under the SFP, from outside of the TOE.

**FDP\_ITC.2.2/Installer** The TSF shall use the security attributes associated with the imported user data.

**FDP\_ITC.2.3/Installer** The TSF shall ensure that the protocol used provides for the unambiguous association between the security attributes and the user data received.

**FDP\_ITC.2.4/Installer** The TSF shall ensure that interpretation of the security attributes of the imported user data is as intended by the source of the user data.


**FDP\_ITC.2.5/Installer** The TSF shall enforce the following rules when importing user data controlled under the SFP from outside the TOE:

**Package loading is allowed only if, for each dependent package, its AID attribute is equal to a resident package AID attribute, the major (minor) Version attribute associated to the dependent package is lesser than or equal to the major (minor) Version attribute associated to the resident package ([JCVM222], §4.5.2)..**

*Application note:*

FDP\_ITC.2.1/Installer:

The most common importation of user data is package loading and applet installation on the behalf of the installer. Security attributes consist of the shareable flag of the class component, AID and version numbers of the package, maximal operand stack size and

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

number of local variables for each method, and export and import components (accessibility).

#### FDP\_ITC.2.3/Installer:

The format of the CAP file is precisely defined in [JCVM222] specifications; it contains the user data (like applet's code and data) and the security attributes altogether. Therefore there is no association to be carried out elsewhere.

#### FDP\_ITC.2.4/Installer:

Each package contains a package Version attribute, which is a pair of major and minor version numbers ([JCVM222], §4.5). With the AID, it describes the package defined in the CAP file. When an export file is used during preparation of a CAP file, the versions numbers and AIDs indicated in the export file are recorded in the CAP files ([JCVM222], §4.5.2): the dependent packages Versions and AIDs attributes allow the retrieval of these identifications. Implementation-dependent checks may occur on a case-by-case basis to indicate that package files are binary compatible. However, package files do have "package Version Numbers" ([JCVM222]) used to indicate binary compatibility or incompatibility between successive implementations of a package, which obviously directly concern this requirement.

#### FDP\_ITC.2.5/Installer:

A package may depend on (import or use data from) other packages already installed. This dependency is explicitly stated in the loaded package in the form of a list of package AIDs.

The intent of this rule is to ensure the binary compatibility of the package with those already on the card ([JCVM222], §4.4).


The installation (the invocation of an applet's install method by the installer) is implementation dependent ([JCRE222], §11.2).

Other rules governing the installation of an applet, that is, its registration to make it SELECTable by giving it a unique AID, are also implementation dependent (see, for example, [JCRE222], §11).

### **FMT\_SMR.1/Installer Security roles**

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/Installer** The TSF shall maintain the roles: **Installer**.

**FMT\_SMR.1.2/Installer** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FPT\_FLS.1/Installer Failure with preservation of secure state

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/Installer** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **the installer fails to load/install a package/applet as described in [JCRE222] §11.1.4.**

*Application note:*

The TOE may provide additional feedback information to the card manager in case of potential security violations (see FAU\_ARP.1).

### FPT\_RCV.3/Installer Automated recovery without undue loss

**FPT\_RCV.3.1/Installer** When automated recovery from **a failure or service discontinuity** is not possible, the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

**FPT\_RCV.3.2/Installer** For **[detection of a potential loss of integrity during the transmission of an Executable Load File to the card, abortion of the installation process of an Executable Load File, or any fatal error occurred during the linking of an Executable Load File to the Executable Files already installed on the card]**, the TSF shall ensure the return of the TOE to a secure state using automated procedures.


**FPT\_RCV.3.3/Installer** The functions provided by the TSF to recover from failure or service discontinuity shall ensure that the secure initial state is restored without exceeding **[the loss of the Executable Load File being installed]** for loss of TSF data or objects under the control of the TSF.

**FPT\_RCV.3.4/Installer** The TSF shall provide the capability to determine the objects that were or were not capable of being recovered.

*Application note:*

FPT\_RCV.3.1/Installer:

This element is not within the scope of the Java Card specification, which only mandates the behavior of the Java Card System in good working order. Further details on the "maintenance mode" shall be provided in specific implementations. The following is an excerpt from [CC-2], p298: In this maintenance mode normal operation might be impossible or severely restricted, as otherwise insecure situations might occur. Typically, only authorised users should be allowed access to this mode but the real details of who can access this mode is a function of FMT: Security management. If FMT: Security management does not put any controls on who can access this mode, then it may be acceptable to allow any user to restore the system if the TOE enters such a state. However, in practice, this is probably not desirable

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

as the user restoring the system has an opportunity to configure the TOE in such a way as to violate the SFRs.

FPT\_RCV.3.2/Installer:

Should the installer fail during loading/installation of a package/applet, it has to revert to a "consistent and secure state". The Java Card RE has some clean up duties as well; see [JCRE222], §11.1.5 for possible scenarios. Precise behavior is left to implementers. This component shall include among the listed failures the deletion of a package/applet. See ([JCRE222], 11.3.4) for possible scenarios. Precise behavior is left to implementers.

Other events such as the unexpected tearing of the card, power loss, and so on, are partially handled by the underlying hardware platform (see [PP0035]) and, from the TOE's side, by events "that clear transient objects" and transactional features. See FPT\_FLS.1.1, FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT and FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL.

FPT\_RCV.3.3/Installer:

The quantification is implementation dependent, but some facts can be recalled here. First, the SCP ensures the atomicity of updates for fields and objects, and a power-failure during a transaction or the normal runtime does not create the loss of otherwise-permanent data, in the sense that memory on a smart card is essentially persistent with this respect (EEPROM). Data stored on the RAM and subject to such failure is intended to have a limited lifetime anyway (runtime data on the stack, transient objects' contents). According to this, the loss of data within the TSF scope should be limited to the same restrictions of the transaction mechanism.

### 6.1.2.3 ADELG Security Functional Requirements

This group consists of the SFRs related to the deletion of applets and/or packages, enforcing the applet deletion manager (ADEL) policy on security aspects outside the runtime. Deletion is a critical operation and therefore requires specific treatment. This policy is better thought as a frame to be filled by ST implementers.


#### FDP\_ACC.2/ADEL Complete access control

**FDP\_ACC.2.1/ADEL** The TSF shall enforce the **ADEL access control SFP** on **S.ADEL, S.JCRE, S.JCVM, O.JAVAOBJECT, O.APPLLET and O.CODE\_PKG** and all operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP.

*Refinement:*

The operations involved in the policy are:

- OP.DELETE\_APPLET,
- OP.DELETE\_PCKG,
- OP.DELETE\_PCKG\_APPLET.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_ACC.2.2/ADEL** The TSF shall ensure that all operations between any subject controlled by the TSF and any object controlled by the TSF are covered by an access control SFP.

**FDP\_ACF.1/ADEL Security attribute based access control**

**FDP\_ACF.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall enforce the **ADEL access control SFP** to objects based on the following:

Subject/Object	Attributes
<b>S.JCVM</b>	<b>Active Applets</b>
<b>S.JCRE</b>	<b>Selected Applet Context, Registered Applets, Resident Packages</b>
<b>O.CODE_PKG</b>	<b>Package AID, Dependent Package AID, Static References</b>
<b>O.APPLET</b>	<b>Applet Selection Status</b>
<b>O.JAVAOBJECT</b>	<b>Owner, Remote</b>

**FDP\_ACF.1.2/ADEL** The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

**In the context of this policy, an object O is reachable if and only one of the following conditions hold:**


- (1) the owner of O is a registered applet instance A (O is reachable from A),**
- (2) a static field of a resident package P contains a reference to O (O is reachable from P),**
- (3) there exists a valid remote reference to O (O is remote reachable),**
- (4) there exists an object O' that is reachable according to either (1) or (2) or (3) above and O' contains a reference to O (the reachability status of O is that of O').**

**The following access control rules determine when an operation among controlled subjects and objects is allowed by the policy:**

**R.JAVA.14 ([JCRE222], §11.3.4.1, Applet Instance Deletion): S.ADEL may perform OP.DELETE\_APPLET upon an O.APPLET only if,**

- (1) S.ADEL is currently selected,**
- (2) there is no instance in the context of O.APPLET that is active in any logical channel and**
- (3) there is no O.JAVAOBJECT owned by O.APPLET such that either O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from an applet instance distinct from O.APPLET, or O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from a package P, or ([JCRE222], §8.5) O.JAVAOBJECT is remote reachable.**

**R.JAVA.15 ([JCRE222], §11.3.4.1, Multiple Applet Instance Deletion): S.ADEL may perform OP.DELETE\_APPLET upon several O.APPLET only if,**

	Reference	D1255596	Release	1.2p <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	Public	Pages	177

- (1) S.ADEL is currently selected,
- (2) there is no instance of any of the O.APPLET being deleted that is active in any logical channel and
- (3) there is no O.JAVAOBJECT owned by any of the O.APPLET being deleted such that either O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from an applet instance distinct from any of those O.APPLET, or O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from a package P, or ([JCRE222], §8.5) O.JAVAOBJECT is remote reachable.

**R.JAVA.16** ([JCRE222], §11.3.4.2, Applet/Library Package Deletion): S.ADEL may perform OP.DELETE\_PKG upon an O.CODE\_PKG only if,

- (1) S.ADEL is currently selected,
- (2) no reachable O.JAVAOBJECT, from a package distinct from O.CODE\_PKG that is an instance of a class that belongs to O.CODE\_PKG, exists on the card and
- (3) there is no resident package on the card that depends on O.CODE\_PKG.

**R.JAVA.17** ([JCRE222], §11.3.4.3, Applet Package and Contained Instances Deletion): S.ADEL may perform OP.DELETE\_PKG\_APPLET upon an O.CODE\_PKG only if,

- (1) S.ADEL is currently selected,
- (2) no reachable O.JAVAOBJECT, from a package distinct from O.CODE\_PKG, which is an instance of a class that belongs to O.CODE\_PKG exists on the card,
- (3) there is no package loaded on the card that depends on O.CODE\_PKG, and
- (4) for every O.APPLET of those being deleted it holds that: (i) there is no instance in the context of O.APPLET that is active in any logical channel and (ii) there is no O.JAVAOBJECT owned by O.APPLET such that either O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from an applet instance not being deleted, or O.JAVAOBJECT is reachable from a package not being deleted, or ([JCRE222], §8.5) O.JAVAOBJECT is remote reachable.


**FDP\_ACF.1.3/ADEL** The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: **none**.

**FDP\_ACF.1.4/ADEL [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall explicitly deny access of **any subject but S.ADEL to O.CODE\_PKG or O.APPLET for the purpose of deleting them from the card.**

*Application note:*

FDP\_ACF.1.2/ADEL:

This policy introduces the notion of reachability, which provides a general means to describe objects that are referenced from a certain applet instance or package.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

S.ADEL calls the "uninstall" method of the applet instance to be deleted, if implemented by the applet, to inform it of the deletion request. The order in which these calls and the dependencies checks are performed are out of the scope of this protection profile.

### **FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL Subset residual information protection**

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the following objects: **applet instances and/or packages when one of the deletion operations in FDP\_ACC.2.1/ADEL is performed on them.**

*Application note:*

Deleted freed resources (both code and data) may be reused, depending on the way they were deleted (logically or physically). Requirements on de-allocation during applet/package deletion are described in [JCRE222], §11.3.4.1, §11.3.4.2 and §11.3.4.3.

### **FMT\_MSA.1/ADEL Management of security attributes**

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall enforce the **ADEL access control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **Registered Applets and Resident Packages to the Java Card RE.**

### **FMT\_MSA.3/ADEL Static attribute initialisation**

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/ADEL** The TSF shall enforce the **ADEL access control SFP** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/ADEL** The TSF shall allow the **following role(s): none**, to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.


### **FMT\_SMF.1/ADEL Specification of Management Functions**

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: **modify the list of registered applets' AIDs and the Resident Packages.**

*Application note:*

The modification of the Active Applets security attribute should be performed in accordance with the rules given in [JCRE222], §4.



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_SMR.1/ADEL Security roles

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall maintain the roles: **applet deletion manager**.

**FMT\_SMR.1.2/ADEL** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

### FPT\_FLS.1/ADEL Failure with preservation of secure state

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/ADEL** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **the applet deletion manager fails to delete a package/applet as described in [JCRE222], §11.3.4.**

*Application note:*

The TOE may provide additional feedback information to the card manager in case of a potential security violation (see FAU\_ARP.1).

The Package/applet instance deletion must be atomic. The "secure state" referred to in the requirement must comply with Java Card specification ([JCRE222], §11.3.4.)

#### 6.1.2.4 RMIG Security Functional Requirements

This group specifies the policies that control the access to the remote objects and the flow of information that takes place when the RMI service is used. The rules relate mainly to the lifetime of the remote references. Information concerning remote object references can be sent out of the card only if the corresponding remote object has been designated as exportable. Array parameters of remote method invocations must be allocated on the card as global arrays. Therefore, the storage of references to those arrays must be restricted as well. The JCRMI policy embodies both an access control and an information flow control policy.

### FDP\_ACC.2/JCRMI Complete access control


**FDP\_ACC.2.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI access control SFP** on **S.CAD, S.JCRE, O.APPLET, O.REMOTE\_OBJ, O.REMOTE\_MTHD, O.ROR, O.RMI\_SERVICE** and all operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP.

*Refinement:*

The operations involved in this policy are:

OP.GET\_ROR,  
OP.INVOKE.



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_ACC.2.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall ensure that all operations between any subject controlled by the TSF and any object controlled by the TSF are covered by an access control SFP.

**FDP\_ACF.1/JCRMI Security attribute based access control**

**FDP\_ACF.1.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI access control SFP** to objects based on the following:

Subject/Object	Attributes
<b>S.JCRE</b>	<b>Selected Applet Context</b>
<b>O.REMOTE_OBJ</b>	<b>Owner, Class, Identifier, ExportedInfo</b>
<b>O.REMOTE_MTHD</b>	<b>Identifier</b>
<b>O.RMI_SERVICE</b>	<b>Owner, Returned References</b>

**FDP\_ACF.1.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

**R.JAVA.18: S.CAD may perform OP.GET\_ROR upon O.APPLET only if O.APPLET is the currently selected applet, and there exists an O.RMI\_SERVICE with a registered initial reference to an O.REMOTE\_OBJ that is owned by O.APPLET.**

**R.JAVA.19: S.JCRE may perform OP.INVOKE upon O.RMI\_SERVICE, O.ROR and O.REMOTE\_MTHD only if O.ROR is valid (as defined in [JCRE222], §8.5) and it belongs to the Returned References of O.RMI\_SERVICE, and if the Identifier of O.REMOTE\_MTHD matches one of the remote methods in the Class of the O.REMOTE\_OBJ to which O.ROR makes reference.**


**FDP\_ACF.1.3/JCRMI** The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: **none**.

**FDP\_ACF.1.4/JCRMI [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall explicitly deny access of **any subject but S.JCRE to O.REMOTE\_OBJ and O.REMOTE\_MTHD for the purpose of performing a remote method invocation.**

*Application note:*

FDP\_ACF.1.2/JCRMI:

The validity of a remote object reference is specified as a lifetime characterization. The security attributes involved in the rules for determining valid remote object references are the Returned References of the O.RMI\_SERVICE and the Active Applets (see FMT\_REV.1.1/JCRMI and FMT\_REV.1.2/JCRMI). The precise mechanism by which a

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

remote method is invoked on a remote object is defined in detail in ([JCRE222], §8.5.2 and [JCAPI222]).

Note that the owner of an O.RMI\_SERVICE is the applet instance that created the object. The attribute Returned References lists the remote object references that have been sent to the S.CAD during the applet selection session. This attribute is implementation dependent.

### **FDP\_IFC.1/JCRMI Subset information flow control**

**FDP\_IFC.1.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI information flow control SFP** on **S.JCRE, S.CAD, I.RORD and OP.RET\_RORD(S.JCRE,S.CAD,I.RORD)**.

*Application note:*

FDP\_IFC.1.1/JCRMI:

Array parameters of remote method invocations must be allocated on the card as global arrays objects. References to global arrays cannot be stored in class variables, instance variables or array components. The control of the flow of that kind of information has already been specified in FDP\_IFC.1.1/JCVM.

A remote object reference descriptor is sent from the card to the CAD either as the result of a successful applet selection command ([JCRE222], §8.4.1), and in this case it describes, if any, the initial remote object reference of the selected applet; or as the result of a remote method invocation ([JCRE222], §8.3.5.1).


### **FDP\_IFF.1/JCRMI Simple security attributes**

**FDP\_IFF.1.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI information flow control SFP** based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

<b>Subjects/Information</b>	<b>Security attributes</b>
<b>I.RORD</b>	<b>ExportedInfo</b>

**FDP\_IFF.1.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

**OP.RET\_RORD(S.JCRE, S.CAD, I.RORD) is permitted only if the attribute ExportedInfo of I.RORD has the value "true" ([JCRE222], §8.5).**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**FDP\_IFF.1.3/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **[no additional information flow control SFP rules]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.4/JCRMI** The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: **[no additional rules]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.5/JCRMI** The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules: **[no additional rules]**.

*Application note:*

The ExportedInfo attribute of I.RORD indicates whether the O.REMOTE\_OBJ which I.RORD identifies is exported or not (as indicated by the security attribute ExportedInfo of the O.REMOTE\_OBJ).

#### **FMT\_MSA.1/EXPORT Management of security attributes**


**FMT\_MSA.1.1/EXPORT** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI access control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes: **ExportedInfo of O.REMOTE\_OBJ to its owner applet.**

*Application note:*

The Exported status of a remote object can be modified by invoking its methods export() and unexport(), and only the owner of the object may perform the invocation without raising a SecurityException (javacard.framework.service.CardRemoteObject). However, even if the owner of the object may provoke the change of the security attribute value, the modification itself can be performed by the Java Card RE.

#### **FMT\_MSA.1/REM\_REFS Management of security attributes**

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/REM\_REFS** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI access control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **Returned References of O.RMI\_SERVICE to its owner applet.**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MSA.3/JCRMI Static attribute initialisation

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the **JCRMI access control SFP and the JCRMI information flow control SFP** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall allow the **following role(s): none**, to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

*Application note:*

FMT\_MSA.3.1/JCRMI:

Remote objects' security attributes are created and initialized at the creation of the object, and except for the ExportedInfo attribute, the values of the attributes are not longer modifiable. The default value of the Exported attribute is true. There is one default value for the Selected Applet Context that is the default applet identifier's context, and one default value for the active context, that is "Java Card RE".

FMT\_MSA.3.2/JCRMI:

The intent is to have none of the identified roles to have privileges with regards to the default values of the security attributes. It should be noticed that creation of objects is an operation controlled by the FIREWALL access control SFP.

### FMT\_REV.1/JCRMI Revocation

**FMT\_REV.1.1/JCRMI [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall restrict the ability to revoke **the Returned References of O.RMI\_SERVICE to the Java Card RE.**

**FMT\_REV.1.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall enforce the rules **that determine the lifetime of remote object references.**


*Application note:*

The rules are described in [JCRE222], §8.5

### FMT\_SMF.1/JCRMI Specification of Management Functions

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:

**modify the security attribute ExportedInfo of O.REMOTE\_OBJ,**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**modify the security attribute Returned References of O.RMI\_SERVICE.**

### **FMT\_SMR.1/JCRMI Security roles**

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/JCRMI** The TSF shall maintain the roles: **applet**.

**FMT\_SMR.1.2/JCRMI** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

*Application note:*

Applets own remote interface objects and may choose to allow or forbid their exportation, which is managed through a security attribute.

#### **6.1.2.5 ODELG Security Functional Requirements**

The following requirements concern the object deletion mechanism. This mechanism is triggered by the applet that owns the deleted objects by invoking a specific API method.


### **FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL Subset residual information protection**

**FDP\_RIP.1.1/ODEL** The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the **deallocation of the resource from** the following objects: **the objects owned by the context of an applet instance which triggered the execution of the method `javacard.framework.JCSystem.requestObjectDeletion()`**

*Application note:*

Freed data resources resulting from the invocation of the method `javacard.framework.JCSystem.requestObjectDeletion()` may be reused. Requirements on de-allocation after the invocation of the method are described in [JCAPI222].

There is no conflict with FDP\_ROL.1 here because of the bounds on the rollback mechanism: the execution of `requestObjectDeletion()` is not in the scope of the rollback because it must be performed in between APDU command processing, and therefore no transaction can be in progress.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### **FPT\_FLS.1/ODEL Failure with preservation of secure state**

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/ODEL** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **the object deletion functions fail to delete all the unreferenced objects owned by the applet that requested the execution of the method.**

*Application note:*

The TOE may provide additional feedback information to the card manager in case of potential security violation (see FAU\_ARP.1).

#### **6.1.2.6 CarG Security Functional Requirements**

This group includes requirements for preventing the installation of packages that has not been bytecode verified, or that has been modified after bytecode verification.

### **FCO\_NRO.2/CM Enforced proof of origin**

**FCO\_NRO.2.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the generation of evidence of origin for transmitted **application packages** at all times.

**FCO\_NRO.2.2/CM [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall be able to relate the **identity** of the originator of the information, and the **application package contained in** the information to which the evidence applies.

**FCO\_NRO.2.3/CM** The TSF shall provide a capability to verify the evidence of origin of information to **recipient** given **as assumption the key used is kept integer and confidential by origin.**


*Application note:*

FCO\_NRO.2.1/CM:

Upon reception of a new application package for installation, the card manager shall first check that it actually comes from the verification authority. The verification authority is the entity responsible for bytecode verification.

FCO\_NRO.2.3/CM:

The exact limitations on the evidence of origin are implementation dependent. In most of the implementations, the card manager performs an immediate verification of the origin of the package using an electronic signature mechanism, and no evidence is kept on the card for future verifications.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## **FDP\_IFC.2/CM Complete information flow control**

**FDP\_IFC.2.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** on **S.INSTALLER, S.BCV, S.CAD and I.APDU** and all operations that cause that information to flow to and from subjects covered by the SFP.

**FDP\_IFC.2.2/CM** The TSF shall ensure that all operations that cause any information in the TOE to flow to and from any subject in the TOE are covered by an information flow control SFP.

### *Application note:*

The subjects covered by this policy are those involved in the loading of an application package by the card through a potentially unsafe communication channel.

The operations that make information to flow between the subjects are those enabling to send a message through and to receive a message from the communication channel linking the card to the outside world. It is assumed that any message sent through the channel as clear text can be read by an attacker. Moreover, an attacker may capture any message sent through the communication channel and send its own messages to the other subjects.

The information controlled by the policy is the APDUs exchanged by the subjects through the communication channel linking the card and the CAD. Each of those messages contain part of an application package that is required to be loaded on the card, as well as any control information used by the subjects in the communication protocol.


## **FDP\_IFF.1/CM Simple security attributes**

**FDP\_IFF.1.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** based on the following types of subject and information security attributes: **[the Command Security Level defined for the messages that the card receives through the secure channel]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.2/CM** The TSF shall permit an information flow between a controlled subject and controlled information via a controlled operation if the following rules hold: **[assignment: the rules describing the communication protocol used by the CAD and the card for transmitting a new package]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.3/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **[possible security levels are: NO-SEC (clear text), C-AUTHENTICATED (authentication of the command's emitter), C-MAC (authentication of the emitter and integrity of the command), C-DEC (authentication of the emitter, integrity and confidentiality of the command)]**.

**FDP\_IFF.1.4/CM** The TSF shall explicitly authorise an information flow based on the following rules: **[the SD may process:**  
**an (INITIALIZE-UPDATE) operation only if the key set specified in the command exist,**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

an (EXTERNAL-AUTHENTICATE) operation if the following conditions are fulfilled: 1) The cryptogram received from the off-card subject is equal to the cryptogram computed by the Security Domain. 2) The MAC attached to the message has been generated using the CMAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

a (GET-DATA) operation if the following condition are fulfilled: 1) If the command security level is at least C-MAC, 2) the MAC attached to the message has been generated from the command using the C-MAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

any received operation for any other command if the following conditions hold: 1) The current security level is at least AUTHENTICATED. 2) If the command security level is at least C-MAC, the MAC attached to the message has been generated from the clear-text command using the C-MAC session key and the current value of the ICV.

**FDP\_IFF.1.5/CM** The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules: **[A Security Domain may always process a (SELECT) operation or a (Get DATA) operation at the security level NO-SEC].**

*Application note:*


FDP\_IFF.1.1/CM:

The security attributes used to enforce the PACKAGE LOADING SFP are implementation dependent. More precisely, they depend on the communication protocol enforced between the CAD and the card. For instance, some of the attributes that can be used are: (1) the keys used by the subjects to encrypt/decrypt their messages; (2) the number of pieces the application package has been split into in order to be sent to the card; (3) the ordinal of each piece in the decomposition of the package, etc. See for example Appendix D of [GP].

FDP\_IFF.1.2/CM:

The precise set of rules to be enforced by the function is implementation dependent. The whole exchange of messages shall verify at least the following two rules: (1) the subject S.INSTALLER shall accept a message only if it comes from the subject S.CAD; (2) the subject S.INSTALLER shall accept an application package only if it has received without modification and in the right order all the APDUs sent by the subject S.CAD.



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FDP\_UIT.1/CM Data exchange integrity

**FDP\_UIT.1.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** to **receive** user data in a manner protected from **modification, deletion, insertion and replay** errors.

**FDP\_UIT.1.2/CM [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall be able to determine on receipt of user data, whether **modification, deletion, insertion, replay of some of the pieces of the application sent by the CAD** has occurred.

*Application note:*

Modification errors should be understood as modification, substitution, unrecoverable ordering change of data and any other integrity error that may cause the application package to be installed on the card to be different from the one sent by the CAD.

### FIA\_UID.1/CM Timing of identification

**FIA\_UID.1.1/CM** The TSF shall allow **selection of a security domain and execution of Card Manager** on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.


**FIA\_UID.1.2/CM** The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

*Application note:*

The list of TSF-mediated actions is implementation-dependent, but package installation requires the user to be identified. Here by user is meant the one(s) that in the Security Target shall be associated to the role(s) defined in the component FMT\_SMR.1/CM.

### FMT\_MSA.1/CM Management of security attributes

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes [**Card Life cycle, Security Level**] to [**Card Manager**].

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MSA.3/CM Static attribute initialisation

**FMT\_MSA.3.1/CM** The TSF shall enforce the **PACKAGE LOADING information flow control SFP** to provide **restrictive** default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP.

**FMT\_MSA.3.2/CM** The TSF shall allow the **[none]** to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

### FMT\_SMF.1/CM Specification of Management Functions

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/CM** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: **[modification of the Card life cycle inducing availability of management functions]**.

### FMT\_SMR.1/CM Security roles

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/CM** The TSF shall maintain the roles **[S.CAD, S.CARDMANAGER]**.

**FMT\_SMR.1.2/CM** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

### FTP\_ITC.1/CM Inter-TSF trusted channel

**FTP\_ITC.1.1/CM** The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.

**FTP\_ITC.1.2/CM [Editorially Refined]** The TSF shall permit **the CAD placed in the card issuer secured environment** to initiate communication via the trusted channel.


**FTP\_ITC.1.3/CM** The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for **loading/installing a new application package on the card**.

*Application note:*

There is no dynamic package loading on the Java Card platform. New packages can be installed on the card only on demand of the card issuer.

#### 6.1.2.7 SCP

This section states the security functional requirements for the Smart Card Platform.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### Operating System

This section presents those requirements of the Smart Card Platform group that concern the Operating System. Due to enlargement in the scope of evaluation, the requirements related to OS are now assigned to the TOE and no more to the environment. Other internal security mechanisms are not addressed by SFR but ADV\_ARC activities.

#### **FPT\_RCV.3/OS Automated recovery without undue loss**

**FPT\_RCV.3.1/OS** When automated recovery from **security policy violation** is not possible, the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

**FPT\_RCV.3.2/OS** For **execution access to a memory zone reserved for TSF data, writing access to a memory zone reserved for TSF's code, and any segmentation fault performed by a Java Card applet**, the TSF shall ensure the return of the TOE to a secure state using automated procedures.

**FPT\_RCV.3.3/OS** The functions provided by the TSF to recover from failure or service discontinuity shall ensure that the secure initial state is restored without exceeding **o the contents of Java Card static fields, instance fields, and array positions that fall under the scope of an open transaction; o the Java Card objects that were allocated into the scope of an open transaction; o the contents of Java Card transient objects; o any possible Executable Load File being loaded when the failure occurred** for loss of TSF data or objects under the control of the TSF.

**FPT\_RCV.3.4/OS** The TSF shall provide the capability to determine the objects that were or were not capable of being recovered.


#### **FPT\_RCV.4/OS Function recovery**

**FPT\_RCV.4.1/OS** The TSF shall ensure that **reading from and writing to static and objects' fields interrupted by power loss** have the property that the function either completes successfully, or for the indicated failure scenarios, recovers to a consistent and secure state.

### Integrated Circuit

The section should contain the requirements of the Smart Card Platform group introduced in [JCSPP] concerning the Integrated Circuit. Due to enlargement in the scope of evaluation, the requirements related to IC are now assigned to the TOE and no more to the environment.

Those requirements are fulfilled in the [ICST] and are covered by the IC certificate reused in the composite evaluation process. There are not repeated here.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

They mainly concern protecting the smart card's chip against physical tampering, preventing the disclosure of information when it is transferred from different physical parts of the chip, providing the basic DES operation, and keeping a secure state when a malfunction is detected and providing an independent security domain for the hardware.

### 6.1.3 (U)SIM

#### 6.1.3.1 Crypto JCAPI

#### FCS\_COP.1/SHA2 Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/SHA2** The TSF shall perform **[computation of a hash value for applet instance's data]** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm **[SHA-384 (48 bytes) or SHA-256 (32 bytes) or SHA2-224 (32 bytes)]** and cryptographic key sizes **[None]** that meet the following: **[FIPS 180-3]**.

*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

#### FCS\_COP.1/CRC Cryptographic operation

**FCS\_COP.1.1/CRC** The TSF shall perform **[Computation of checksum CRC16 or CRC32 of applet instance's data]** in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm **[CRC16 or CRC32]** and cryptographic key sizes **[none]** that meet the following: **[ISO3309]**.


*Application note:*

The TOE shall provide a subset of cryptographic operations defined in [JCAPI222] (see javacardx.crypto.Cipher and javacardx.security packages).

#### FCS\_RND.1 Random Number Generation

**FCS\_RND.1.1** The TSF shall provide a mechanism to generate random numbers that meet **the STANDARD level specified in [DCSSI2741]**.

#### 6.1.3.2 SecureAPI

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

#### **FPT\_FLS.1/SecureAPI Failure with preservation of secure state**

**FPT\_FLS.1.1/SecureAPI** The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: **the application fails to perform a specific execution flow control protected by the Secure API.**

#### **FPT\_ITT.1/SecureAPI Basic internal TSF data transfer protection**

**FPT\_ITT.1.1/SecureAPI** The TSF shall protect TSF data from **disclosure and modification** when it is transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

#### **FPR\_UNO.1/SecureAPI Unobservability**

**FPR\_UNO.1.1/SecureAPI** The TSF shall ensure that **external attacker** are unable to observe the operation **as sensitive comparison or copy** on **sensitive objects defined by the application using the Secure API.**

#### 6.1.3.3 GemActivate

#### **FMT\_SMR.1/GemActivate Security roles**

**FMT\_SMR.1.1/GemActivate** The TSF shall maintain the roles [**GemActivate Administrator**].


**FMT\_SMR.1.2/GemActivate** The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

#### **FMT\_SMF.1/GemActivate Specification of Management Functions**

**FMT\_SMF.1.1/GemActivate** The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: **activation of optional platform service.**

#### **FMT\_MOF.1/GemActivate Management of security functions behaviour**

**FMT\_MOF.1.1/GemActivate** The TSF shall restrict the ability to **disable and enable** the functions **activation or inhibition of optional platform services as: cryptographic algorithm, package, applet instance, scalability (extension of available NVM) and NFC interface (SWP, HCI gate) to Gemactivate Administrator, MNO.**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### FMT\_MSA.1/GemActivate Management of security attributes

**FMT\_MSA.1.1/GemActivate** The TSF shall enforce the **GemActivate access control SFP** to restrict the ability to **modify** the security attributes **state (deactivated, activated, inhibited)** of **optional platform service** to **Gemactivate Administrator under control of MNO**.

### FMT\_MTD.1/GemActivate Management of TSF data

**FMT\_MTD.1.1/GemActivate** The TSF shall restrict the ability to **query** the [**List of deactivated/activated/ inhibited optional platform services**] to [**Gemactivate Administrator and MNO**].

#### 6.1.3.4 EMVUtilAPI

### FPT\_ITT.1/EMVUtilAPI Basic internal TSF data transfer protection

**FPT\_ITT.1.1/EMVUtilAPI** The TSF shall protect TSF data from **modification** when it is transmitted between separate parts of the TOE.

### FDP\_SDI.1/EMVUtilAPI Stored data integrity monitoring

**FDP\_SDI.1.1/EMVUtilAPI** The TSF shall monitor user data stored in containers controlled by the TSF for **integrity error using proprietary checksum** on all objects, based on the following attributes: **Protected array of bits, array of short or arrays of objects**.

## 6.2 Security Assurance Requirements

The security assurance requirement level is EAL4 augmented with ALC\_DVS.2 and AVA\_VAN.5.

## 6.3 Security Requirements Rationale


### 6.3.1 Objectives

#### 6.3.1.1 Security Objectives for the TOE

##### (U)SIM Java card TM Platform Protection Profile

*Basic TOE*

Card Management

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

**O.CARD-MANAGEMENT** The security objective O.CARD-MANAGEMENT is met by the following SFRs:

FDP\_UIT.1/CCM enforces the Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy and the Security Domain access control policy to ensure the integrity of card management operations.

FDP\_ROL.1/CCM ensures that card management operations may be cleanly aborted.

FDP\_ITC.2/CCM enforces the Firewall access control policy and the Secure Channel Protocol information flow policy when importing card management data.

FPT\_FLS.1/CCM preserves a secure state when failures occur.

All SFRs related to Security Domains (FDP\_ACC.1/SD, FDP\_ACF.1/SD, FMT\_MSA.1/SD, FMT\_MSA.3/SD, FMT\_SMF.1/SD, FMT\_SMR.1/SD) cover this security objective by enforcing a Security Domain access control policy (rules and restrictions) that ensures a secure card content management.

All SFRs related to the secure channel (FMT\_MSA.1/SC, FMT\_MSA.3/SC, FMT\_SMF.1/SC, FIA\_UAU.1/SC, FTP\_ITC.1/SC, FCO\_NRO.2/SC, FDP\_IFC.2/SC, FDP\_IFF.1/SC, FIA\_UID.1/SC, FIA\_UAU.4/SC) support this security objective by enforcing Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy that ensures the integrity and the authenticity of card management operations.

**O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS** The security objective O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS is met by the following SFRs:

All SFRs related to Security Domains (FDP\_ACC.1/SD, FDP\_ACF.1/SD, FMT\_MSA.1/SD, FMT\_MSA.3/SD, FMT\_SMF.1/SD, FMT\_SMR.1/SD) cover this security objective by enforcing a Security Domain access control policy (rules and restrictions) that ensures a secure card content management.

All SFRs related to the secure channel (FMT\_MSA.1/SC, FMT\_MSA.3/SC, FMT\_SMF.1/SC, FIA\_UAU.1/SC, FTP\_ITC.1/SC, FCO\_NRO.2/SC, FDP\_IFC.2/SC, FDP\_IFF.1/SC, FIA\_UID.1/SC, FIA\_UAU.4/SC) support this security objective by enforcing Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy that ensures the integrity and the authenticity of card management operations.

**O.APPLI-AUTH** The security objective O.APPLI-AUTH is met by the following SFRs:

FDP\_ROL.1/CCM ensures that card management operations may be cleanly aborted.

FPT\_FLS.1/CCM preserves a secure state when failures occur.

FCS\_COP.1/DAP compute DAP to be compared with input and ensures that the loaded Executable Application is legitimate by specifying the algorithm to be used in order to verify the DAP signature of the Verification Authority.


Communication

**O.COMM\_AUTH** This security objective is covered by the following security functional requirements:

FTP\_ITC.1/SC which ensures the origin of card administration commands.

FMT\_SMR.1/SD specifies the authorized identified roles enabling to send and authenticate card management commands.

FDP\_IFC.2/SC and FDP\_IFF.1/SC enforces the Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy to ensure the origin of administration requests.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

FMT\_MSA.1/SC and FMT\_MSA.3/SC covers indirectly this security objective by specifying security attributes enabling to authenticate card management requests.

FIA\_UID.1/SC and FIA\_UAU.1/SC specify the actions that can be performed before authenticating the origin of the APDU commands that the (U)SIM card receives.

The security functional requirement FCS\_COP.1 defined in [JCRE] supports also this security objective by specifying secure cryptographic algorithm that shall be used to determine the origin of the card management commands.

**O.COMM\_INTEGRITY** This security objective is covered by the following security functional requirements:

FTP\_ITC.1/SC which ensures the integrity of card management commands.

FMT\_SMF.1/SC specifies the actions activating the integrity check on the card management commands.

FMT\_SMR.1/SD defines the roles enabling to send and authenticate the card management requests for which the integrity has to be ensured.

FDP\_IFC.2/SC and FDP\_IFF.1/SC enforces the Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy to guarantee the integrity of administration requests.

FMT\_MSA.1/SC and FMT\_MSA.3/SC covers indirectly this security objective by specifying security attributes enabling to guarantee the integrity of card management requests.

The security functional requirement FCS\_COP.1 defined in [JCRE] supports also this security objective by specifying secure cryptographic algorithm that shall be used to ensure the integrity of the card management commands.

**O.COMM\_CONFIDENTIALITY** This security objective is covered by the following security functional requirements:

FTP\_ITC.1/SC which ensures the confidentiality of card management commands.

FMT\_SMF.1/SC specifies the actions ensuring the confidentiality of the card management commands.

FMT\_SMR.1/SD defines the roles enabling to send and authenticate the card management requests for which the confidentiality has to be ensured.


FDP\_IFC.2/SC and FDP\_IFF.1/SC enforces the Secure Channel Protocol information flow control policy to guarantee the confidentiality of administration requests.

FMT\_MSA.1/SC and FMT\_MSA.3/SC covers indirectly this security objective by specifying security attributes enabling to guarantee the confidentiality of card management requests by decrypting those requests and imposing management conditions on that attributes.

The security functional requirement FCS\_COP.1 defined in [JCRE] supports also this security objective by specifying secure cryptographic algorithm that shall be used to ensure the confidentiality of the card management commands.

SCP



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

**O.SCP-SUPPORT** The SCP is a part of the TOE supporting TSFs of the upper layer of the TOE, especially for recovery operations as FPT\_RCV.4/OS.

**Java Card System Protection Profile - Open Configuration**

*IDENTIFICATION*

**O.SID** Subjects' identity is AID-based (applets, packages), and is met by the following SFRs: FDP\_ITC.2/Installer, FIA\_ATD.1/AID, FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE, FMT\_MSA.1/JCVM, FMT\_MSA.1/REM\_REFS, FMT\_MSA.1/EXPORT, FMT\_MSA.1/ADEL, FMT\_MSA.1/CM, FMT\_MSA.3/JCRMI, FMT\_MSA.3/ADEL, FMT\_MSA.3/FIREWALL, FMT\_MSA.3/JCVM, FMT\_MSA.3/CM, FMT\_SMF.1/CM, FMT\_SMF.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMF.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMF.1/JCRMI, FMT\_MTD.1/JCRE and FMT\_MTD.3/JCRE.


Lastly, installation procedures ensure protection against forgery (the AID of an applet is under the control of the TSFs) or re-use of identities (FIA\_UID.2/AID, FIA\_USB.1/AID).

*EXECUTION*

**O.FIREWALL** This objective is met by the FIREWALL access control policy FDP\_ACC.2/FIREWALL and FDP\_ACF.1/FIREWALL, the JCVM information flow control policy (FDP\_IFF.1/JCVM, FDP\_IFC.1/JCVM), the JCRMI access control policy (FDP\_ACC.2/JCRMI, FDP\_ACF.1/JCRMI) and the functional requirement FDP\_ITC.2/Installer. The functional requirements of the class FMT (FMT\_MTD.1/JCRE, FMT\_MTD.3/JCRE, FMT\_SMR.1/Installer, FMT\_SMR.1, FMT\_SMF.1, FMT\_SMR.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMR.1/JCRMI, FMT\_SMF.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMF.1/JCRMI, FMT\_SMF.1/CM, FMT\_MSA.1/CM, FMT\_MSA.3/CM, FMT\_SMR.1/CM, FMT\_MSA.2/FIREWALL\_JCVM, FMT\_MSA.3/FIREWALL, FMT\_MSA.3/JCVM, FMT\_MSA.1/ADEL, FMT\_MSA.3/ADEL, FMT\_MSA.1/EXPORT, FMT\_MSA.1/REM\_REFS, FMT\_MSA.3/JCRMI, FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE, FMT\_MSA.1/JCVM, FMT\_REV.1/JCRMI) also indirectly contribute to meet this objective.

**O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_CONFID** Only arrays can be designated as global, and the only global arrays required in the Java Card API are the APDU buffer and the global byte array input parameter (bArray) to an applet's install method. The clearing requirement of these arrays is met by (FDP\_RIP.1/APDU and FDP\_RIP.1/bArray respectively). The JCVM information flow control policy (FDP\_IFF.1/JCVM, FDP\_IFC.1/JCVM) prevents an application from keeping a pointer to a shared buffer, which could be used to read its contents when the buffer is being used by another application.

Protection of the array parameters of remotely invoked methods, which are global as well, is covered by the general initialization of method parameters (FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL, FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT, FDP\_RIP.1/KEYS, FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL and FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT).


	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

**O.GLOBAL\_ARRAYS\_INTEG** This objective is met by the JCVM information flow control policy (FDP\_IFF.1/JCVM, FDP\_IFC.1/JCVM), which prevents an application from keeping a pointer to the APDU buffer of the card or to the global byte array of the applet's install method. Such a pointer could be used to access and modify it when the buffer is being used by another application.

**O.NATIVE** This security objective is covered by FDP\_ACF.1/FIREWALL: the only means to execute native code is the invocation of a Java Card API method. This objective mainly relies on the environmental objective OE.APPLET, which uphold the assumption A.APPLET.

**O.OPERATE** The TOE is protected in various ways against applets' actions (FPT\_TDC.1), the FIREWALL access control policy FDP\_ACC.2/FIREWALL and FDP\_ACF.1/FIREWALL, and is able to detect and block various failures or security violations during usual working (FPT\_FLS.1/ADEL, FPT\_FLS.1/JCS, FPT\_FLS.1/ODEL, FPT\_FLS.1/Installer, FAU\_ARP.1). Its security-critical parts and procedures are also protected: safe recovery from failure is ensured (FPT\_RCV.3/Installer), applets' installation may be cleanly aborted (FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL), communication with external users and their internal subjects is well-controlled (FDP\_ITC.2/Installer, FIA\_ATD.1/AID, FIA\_USB.1/AID) to prevent alteration of TSF data (also protected by components of the FPT class).

Almost every objective and/or functional requirement indirectly contributes to this one too.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

*Application note:* Startup of the TOE (TSF-testing) can be covered by FPT\_TST.1. This SFR component is not mandatory in [JCRE222], but appears in most of security requirements documents for masked applications. Testing could also occur randomly. Self-tests may become mandatory in order to comply to FIPS certification [FIPS 140-2].

**O.REALLOCATION** This security objective is satisfied by the following SFRs: FDP\_RIP.1/APDU, FDP\_RIP.1/bArray, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT, FDP\_RIP.1/KEYS, FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT, FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL, FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS, FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL, which imposes that the contents of the re-allocated block shall always be cleared before delivering the block.


**O.RESOURCES** The TSFs detects stack/memory overflows during execution of applications (FAU\_ARP.1, FPT\_FLS.1/ADEL, FPT\_FLS.1/JCS, FPT\_FLS.1/ODEL, FPT\_FLS.1/Installer). Failed installations are not to create memory leaks (FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL, FPT\_RCV.3/Installer) as well. Memory management is controlled by the TSF (FMT\_MTD.1/JCRE, FMT\_MTD.3/JCRE, FMT\_SMR.1/Installer, FMT\_SMR.1, FMT\_SMF.1 FMT\_SMR.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMR.1/JCRMI, FMT\_SMF.1/ADEL, FMT\_SMF.1/JCRMI, FMT\_SMF.1/CM and FMT\_SMR.1/CM).

*SERVICES*

**O.ALARM** This security objective is met by FPT\_FLS.1/Installer, FPT\_FLS.1/JCS, FPT\_FLS.1/ADEL, FPT\_FLS.1/ODEL which guarantee that a secure state is preserved by the TSF when failures occur, and FAU\_ARP.1 which defines TSF reaction upon detection of a potential security violation.

**O.CIPHER** This security objective is directly covered by FCS\_CKM.1/RSA, FCS\_CKM.1/DES, FCS\_CKM.1/AES, FCS\_CKM.2/DES, FCS\_CKM.2/AES, FCS\_CKM.2/RSA, FCS\_CKM.3/AES, FCS\_CKM.3/RSA, FCS\_CKM.3/DES, FCS\_CKM.4, FCS\_COP.1/DES\_CIPHER, FCS\_COP.1/AES\_CIPHER, FCS\_COP.1/RSA\_CIPHER.

The SFR FPR\_UNO.1 contributes in covering this security objective and controls the observation of the cryptographic operations which may be used to disclose the keys.

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

**O.KEY-MNGT** This relies on the same security functional requirements as O.CIPHER, plus FDP\_RIP.1 and FDP\_SDI.2 as well. Precisely it is met by the following components: FCS\_CKM.1/RSA, FCS\_CKM.1/DES, FCS\_CKM.1/AES, FCS\_CKM.2/DES, FCS\_CKM.2/AES, FCS\_CKM.2/RSA, FCS\_CKM.3/AES, FCS\_CKM.3/RSA, FCS\_CKM.3/DES, FCS\_CKM.4, FCS\_COP.1/DES\_MAC\_COMP, FCS\_COP.1/AES\_MAC\_COMP, FCS\_COP.1/RSA\_SIGN, FCS\_COP.1/HMAC, FCS\_COP.1/DES\_CIPHER, FCS\_COP.1/RSA\_CIPHER, FPR\_UNO.1, FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL, FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS, FDP\_RIP.1/APDU, FDP\_RIP.1/bArray, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT, FDP\_RIP.1/KEYS, FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL and FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT.

**O.PIN-MNGT** This security objective is ensured by FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL, FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS, FDP\_RIP.1/APDU, FDP\_RIP.1/bArray, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT, FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL, FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT, FPR\_UNO.1, FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL and FDP\_SDI.2 security functional requirements. The TSFs behind these are implemented by API classes. The firewall security functions FDP\_ACC.2/FIREWALL and FDP\_ACF.1/FIREWALL shall protect the access to private and internal data of the objects.

**O.REMOTE** The access to the TOE's internal data and the flow of information from the card to the CAD required by the JCRMI service is under control of the JCRMI access control policy (FDP\_ACC.2/JCRMI, FDP\_ACF.1/JCRMI) and the JCRMI information flow control policy (FDP\_IFC.1/JCRMI, FDP\_IFF.1/JCRMI). The security functional requirements of the class FMT (FMT\_MSA.1/EXPORT, FMT\_MSA.1/REM\_REFS, FMT\_MSA.3/JCRMI, FMT\_REV.1/JCRMI and FMT\_SMR.1/JCRMI) included in the group RMIG also contribute to meet this objective.

**O.TRANSACTION** Directly met by FDP\_ROL.1/FIREWALL, FDP\_RIP.1/ABORT, FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL, FDP\_RIP.1/APDU, FDP\_RIP.1/bArray, FDP\_RIP.1/KEYS, FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL, FDP\_RIP.1/TRANSIENT and FDP\_RIP.1/OBJECTS (more precisely, by the element FDP\_RIP.1.1/ABORT).


#### *OBJECT DELETION*

**O.OBJ-DELETION** This security objective specifies that deletion of objects is secure. The security objective is met by the security functional requirements FDP\_RIP.1/ODEL and FPT\_FLS.1/ODEL.

#### *APPLET MANAGEMENT*

**O.DELETION** This security objective specifies that applet and package deletion must be secure. The non-introduction of security holes is ensured by the ADEL access control policy (FDP\_ACC.2/ADEL, FDP\_ACF.1/ADEL). The integrity and confidentiality of data that does not belong to the deleted applet or package is a by-product of this policy as well. Non-accessibility of deleted data is met by FDP\_RIP.1/ADEL and the TSFs are protected against possible failures of the deletion procedures (FPT\_FLS.1/ADEL, FPT\_RCV.3/Installer). The security functional requirements of the class FMT (FMT\_MSA.1/ADEL, FMT\_MSA.3/ADEL, FMT\_SMR.1/ADEL) included in the group ADELG also contribute to meet this objective.

**O.LOAD** This security objective specifies that the loading of a package into the card must be secure. Evidence of the origin of the package is enforced (FCO\_NRO.2/CM) and the

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

integrity of the corresponding data is under the control of the PACKAGE LOADING information flow policy (FDP\_IFC.2/CM, FDP\_IFF.1/CM) and FDP\_UIT.1/CM. Appropriate identification (FIA\_UID.1/CM) and transmission mechanisms are also enforced (FTP\_ITC.1/CM).

**O.INSTALL** This security objective specifies that installation of applets must be secure. Security attributes of installed data are under the control of the FIREWALL access control policy (FDP\_ITC.2/Installer), and the TSFs are protected against possible failures of the installer (FPT\_FLS.1/Installer, FPT\_RCV.3/Installer).

*SCP*

**O.SCP.RECOVERY** The SCP is a part of the TOE supporting TSFs of the upper layer of the TOE, especially for recovery operations as FPT\_RCV.3/OS.

**O.SCP.IC** The SCP.IC is a part of the TOE supporting TSFs of the upper layer of the TOE and more specially FPT\_FLS.1/JCS

**(U)SIM**

**O.Secure\_API** The security objective is met by the following SFR FPT\_FLS.1/SecureAPI, FPT\_ITT.1/SecureAPI and FPR\_UNO.1/SecureAPI.

**O.RND** The security objective O.RND is met by the following SFR FCS\_RND.1.

**O.JCAPI-Services** The security objective is met by the following SFR FCS\_COP.1/SHA2 and FCS\_COP.1/CRC.


**O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_AUDIT** The security objective is met by the following SFR: FMT\_MTD.1/GemActivate, FMT\_SMR.1/GemActivate, FMT\_SMF.1/GemActivate.

**O.REMOTE\_SERVICE\_ACTIVATION** The security objective is met by the following SFR: FMT\_SMR.1/GemActivate, FMT\_SMF.1/GemActivate, FMT\_MOF.1/GemActivate, FMT\_MSA.1/GemActivate.


**O.EMVUtil\_API** The security objective is met by the following SFR: FPT\_ITT.1/EMVUtilAPI, FDP\_SDI.1/EMVUtilAPI.

**6.3.2 Rationale tables of Security Objectives and SFRs**

Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
---------------------	----------------------------------	-----------

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> (Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ROL.1/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UAU.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ITC.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UAU.4/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UAU.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UAU.4/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ITC.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ROL.1/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/CCM</a> , <a href="#">FCS_COP.1/DAP</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.COMM AUTH</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ITC.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UAU.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.COMM INTEGRITY</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ITC.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.COMM CONFIDENTIALITY</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ITC.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>	<a href="#">FPT_RCV.4/OS</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>


Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
<a href="#">O.SID</a>	<a href="#">FIA ATD.1/AID</a> , <a href="#">FIA UID.2/AID</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/REM REFS</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/EXPORT</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/CM</a> , <a href="#">FDP ITC.2/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.3/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FIA USB.1/AID</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">FDP IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FDP IFF.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/EXPORT</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/REM REFS</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT REV.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FDP ITC.2/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACC.2/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACF.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.2/FIREWALL JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.3/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a>	<a href="#">FDP IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FDP IFF.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/OBJECTS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS INTEG</a>	<a href="#">FDP IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FDP IFF.1/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.NATIVE</a>	<a href="#">FDP ACF.1/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>




Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>	<a href="#">FAU ARP.1</a> , <a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FIA ATD.1/AID</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/JCS</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FDP ITC.2/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FPT RCV.3/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACF.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FPT TDC.1</a> , <a href="#">FIA USB.1/AID</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a>	<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/OBJECTS</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>	<a href="#">FAU ARP.1</a> , <a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/JCS</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT RCV.3/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMF.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT MTD.3/JCRE</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.ALARM</a>	<a href="#">FPT FLS.1/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/JCS</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FAU ARP.1</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a>	<a href="#">FCS CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.4</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">FPR UNO.1</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/RSA</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> (Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>	<a href="#">FCS CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.4</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">FPR UNO.1</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/OBJECTS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a> , <a href="#">FDP SDI.2</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/HMAC</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.2/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS CKM.3/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES MAC COMP</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES MAC COMP</a> , <a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA SIGN</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>	<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/OBJECTS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a> , <a href="#">FPR UNO.1</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a> , <a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP SDI.2</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACF.1/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>	<a href="#">FDP ACC.2/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FDP ACF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FDP IFC.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FDP IFF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/EXPORT</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.1/REM REFS</a> , <a href="#">FMT MSA.3/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT REV.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT SMR.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>	<a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a> , <a href="#">FDP RIP.1/OBJECTS</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>	<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ODEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT FLS.1/ODEL</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Security Objectives	Security Functional Requirements	Rationale
<a href="#">O.DELETION</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>	<a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>	<a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/Installer</a> , <a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/Installer</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>	<a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/OS</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.SCP.IC</a>	<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/JCS</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>	<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/SecureAPI</a> , <a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/SecureAPI</a> , <a href="#">FPR_UNO.1/SecureAPI</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.RND</a>	<a href="#">FCS_RND.1</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>	<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/SHA2</a> , <a href="#">FCS_COP.1/CRC</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a>	<a href="#">FMT_MTD.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MOF.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>
<a href="#">O.EMVUtil_API</a>	<a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/EMVUtilAPI</a> , <a href="#">FDP_SDI.1/EMVUtilAPI</a>	<a href="#">Section 4.3.1</a>


**Table 14 Security Objectives and SFRs - Coverage**

Security Functional Requirements	Security Objectives
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/DAP</a>	<a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/CCM</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ROL.1/CCM</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>
<a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CCM</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/CCM</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.APPLI-AUTH</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UAU.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UAU.4/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>

Security Functional Requirements	Security Objectives
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/SC</a>	<a href="#">O.CARD-MANAGEMENT</a> , <a href="#">O.DOMAIN-RIGHTS</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_AUTH</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM INTEGRITY</a> , <a href="#">O.COMM_CONFIDENTIALITY</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.NATIVE</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS INTEG</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS INTEG</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/OBJECTS</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCRE</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.2/FIREWALL_JCVM</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCVM</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/DES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/AES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/RSA</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/DES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/AES</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/RSA</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>


Security Functional Requirements	Security Objectives
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES CIPHER</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES MAC COMP</a>	<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES CIPHER</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES MAC COMP</a>	<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA SIGN</a>	<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA CIPHER</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/HMAC</a>	<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL ARRAYS CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a>
<a href="#">FAU ARP.1</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a>
<a href="#">FDP SDI.2</a>	<a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FPR UNO.1</a>	<a href="#">O.CIPHER</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a>
<a href="#">FPT FLS.1/JCS</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.SCP.IC</a>
<a href="#">FPT TDC.1</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>
<a href="#">FIA ATD.1/AID</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>
<a href="#">FIA UID.2/AID</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a>
<a href="#">FIA USB.1/AID</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a>
<a href="#">FMT MTD.1/JCRE</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FMT MTD.3/JCRE</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>

Security Functional Requirements	Security Objectives
<a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/Installer</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/Installer</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/Installer</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/Installer</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a> , <a href="#">O.INSTALL</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/ADEL</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/EXPORT</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/REM_REFS</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FMT_REV.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/ODEL</a>	<a href="#">O.GLOBAL_ARRAYS_CONFID</a> , <a href="#">O.REALLOCATION</a> , <a href="#">O.KEY-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.PIN-MNGT</a> , <a href="#">O.TRANSACTION</a> , <a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/ODEL</a>	<a href="#">O.OPERATE</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a> , <a href="#">O.ALARM</a> , <a href="#">O.OBJ-DELETION</a>
<a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)	Pages

Security Functional Requirements	Security Objectives
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>
<a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.SID</a> , <a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">O.RESOURCES</a>
<a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/CM</a>	<a href="#">O.LOAD</a>
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/OS</a>	<a href="#">O.SCP.RECOVERY</a>
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.4/OS</a>	<a href="#">O.SCP-SUPPORT</a>
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/SHA2</a>	<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/CRC</a>	<a href="#">O.JCAPI-Services</a>
<a href="#">FCS_RND.1</a>	<a href="#">O.RND</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/SecureAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>
<a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/SecureAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>
<a href="#">FPR_UNO.1/SecureAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.Secure_API</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a> , <a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MOF.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_ACTIVATION</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MTD.1/GemActivate</a>	<a href="#">O.REMOTE_SERVICE_AUDIT</a>
<a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/EMVUtilAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.EMVUtil_API</a>
<a href="#">FDP_SDI.1/EMVUtilAPI</a>	<a href="#">O.EMVUtil_API</a>

**Table 15 SFRs and Security Objectives**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)	
			Pages	<b>177</b>

### 6.3.3 Dependencies

#### 6.3.3.1 SFRs dependencies

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/Installer</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FPT_TDC.1) and (FTP_ITC.1 or FTP_TRP.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FPT_TDC.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/Installer</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/Installer</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/Installer</a>	(AGD_OPE.1)	<a href="#">AGD_OPE.1</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/ADEL</a>	(FDP_ACF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/ADEL</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/ADEL</a>	(FDP_ACC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/ADEL</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/ADEL</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/ADEL</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/ADEL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/ADEL</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/ADEL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/ADEL</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/ADEL</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/ADEL</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/ADEL</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI</a>	(FDP_ACF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/JCRMI</a>	(FDP_ACC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCRMI</a>	(FDP_IFF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCRMI</a>	(FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/EXPORT</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/REM REFS</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/JCRMI</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>




Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCRMI</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/EXPORT</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/REM_REFS</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FMT_REV.1/JCRMI</a>	(FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/JCRMI</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/JCRMI</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.2/AID</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/ODEL</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/ODEL</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/CM</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a>	(FDP_IFF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/CM</a>	(FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/CM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FTP_ITC.1 or FTP_TRP.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/CM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/CM</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/CM</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/CM</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a>
<a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/CM</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/SHA2</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/CRC</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	
<a href="#">FCS_RND.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/SecureAPI</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/SecureAPI</a>	No dependencies	

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FPR_UNO.1/SecureAPI</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/CM</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.2/AID</a> , <a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_MOF.1/GemActivate</a>	(FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/GemActivate</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MTD.1/GemActivate</a>	(FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/GemActivate</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/GemActivate</a>
<a href="#">FPT_ITT.1/EMVUtilAPI</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP_SDI.1/EMVUtilAPI</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a>	(FDP_ACF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/FIREWALL</a>	(FDP_ACC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/FIREWALL</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a>	(FDP_IFF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCVM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFF.1/JCVM</a>	(FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCVM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_RIP.1/OBJECTS</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCRE</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCVM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.2/FIREWALL JCVM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/FIREWALL</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCRE</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/JCVM</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/JCVM</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1</a>	No dependencies	

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.2/AID</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a>	(FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a>	(FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a> , <a href="#">FCS_COP.1/AES_CIPHER</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a>	(FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a> , <a href="#">FCS_COP.1/RSA_SIGN</a> , <a href="#">FCS_COP.1/RSA_CIPHER</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/DES</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/AES</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.2/RSA</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/DES</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/AES</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.3/RSA</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a>
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/DES_CIPHER</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>


Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/DES MAC COMP</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES CIPHER</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/AES MAC COMP</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA SIGN</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/RSA CIPHER</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/RSA</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FCS COP.1/HMAC</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/DES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.1/AES</a> , <a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a>
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/ABORT</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/APDU</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/bArray</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/KEYS</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP RIP.1/TRANSIENT</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP ROL.1/FIREWALL</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.2/FIREWALL</a> , <a href="#">FDP_IFC.1/JCVM</a>
<a href="#">FAU ARP.1</a>	(FAU_SAA.1)	
<a href="#">FDP SDI.2</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPR UNO.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT FLS.1/JCS</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FPT TDC.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FIA ATD.1/AID</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FIA UID.2/AID</a>	No dependencies	

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FIA_USB.1/AID</a>	(FIA_ATD.1)	<a href="#">FIA_ATD.1/AID</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MTD.1/JCRE</a>	(FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MTD.3/JCRE</a>	(FMT_MTD.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MTD.1/JCRE</a>
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.3/OS</a>	(AGD_OPE.1)	<a href="#">AGD_OPE.1</a>
<a href="#">FPT_RCV.4/OS</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FCS_COP.1/DAP</a>	(FCS_CKM.1 or FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2) and (FCS_CKM.4)	<a href="#">FCS_CKM.4</a> , <a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/CCM</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ITC.2/CCM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FPT_TDC.1) and (FTP_ITC.1 or FTP_TRP.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ROL.1/CCM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a>
<a href="#">FDP_UIT.1/CCM</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FTP_ITC.1 or FTP_TRP.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FPT_FLS.1/CCM</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a>	(FDP_ACF.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/SD</a>
<a href="#">FDP_ACF.1/SD</a>	(FDP_ACC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SD</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SD</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SD</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SD</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FCO_NRO.2/SC</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a>	(FDP_IFT.1)	<a href="#">FDP_IFT.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FDP_IFT.1/SC</a>	(FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_MSA.3)	<a href="#">FDP_IFC.2/SC</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a>

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FIA_UAU.1/SC</a>	(FIA_UID.1)	<a href="#">FIA_UID.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FIA_UAU.4/SC</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a>	(FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1) and (FMT_SMF.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FDP_ACC.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FMT_MSA.3/SC</a>	(FMT_MSA.1) and (FMT_SMR.1)	<a href="#">FMT_SMR.1/SD</a> , <a href="#">FMT_MSA.1/SC</a>
<a href="#">FMT_SMF.1/SC</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">FTP_ITC.1/SC</a>	No dependencies	

**Table 16 SFRs dependencies**

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

Rationale for the exclusion of dependencies

**The dependency FIA\_UID.1 of FMT\_SMR.1/Installer is unsupported.** This PP does not require the identification of the "installer" since it can be considered as part of the TSF.

**The dependency FIA\_UID.1 of FMT\_SMR.1/ADEL is unsupported.** This PP does not require the identification of the "deletion manager" since it can be considered as part of the TSF.

**The dependency FCS\_CKM.4 of FCS\_COP.1/SHA2 is unsupported.** Hash operation according to SHA2 do not require key.

**The dependency FCS\_CKM.1 or FDP\_ITC.1 or FDP\_ITC.2 of FCS\_COP.1/SHA2 is unsupported.** Hash operation according to SHA2 do not require key.

**The dependency FCS\_CKM.4 of FCS\_COP.1/CRC is unsupported.** CRC operations do not require any key.

**The dependency FCS\_CKM.1 or FDP\_ITC.1 or FDP\_ITC.2 of FCS\_COP.1/CRC is unsupported.** CRC operations do not require any key.

**The dependency FDP\_ACC.1 or FDP\_IFC.1 of FMT\_MSA.1/GemActivate is unsupported.** Gemactivate Access Control policy is dedicated to TOE services linked to TSF data, therefore no user data is used requiring link to FDP family.

**The dependency FMT\_SMF.1 of FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE is unsupported.** The dependency between FMT\_MSA.1/JCRE and FMT\_SMF.1 is not satisfied because no management functions are required for the Java Card RE.

**The dependency FAU\_SAA.1 of FAU\_ARP.1 is unsupported.** The dependency of FAU\_ARP.1 on FAU\_SAA.1 assumes that a "potential security violation" generates an audit event. On the contrary, the events listed in FAU\_ARP.1 are self-contained (arithmetic exception, ill-formed bytecodes, access failure) and ask for a straightforward reaction of the TSFs on their occurrence at runtime. The JCVM or other components of the TOE detect these events during their usual working order. Thus, there is no mandatory audit recording in this PP.

**The dependency FPT\_TDC.1 of FDP\_ITC.2/CCM is unsupported.** See PP.


**6.3.3.2 SARs dependencies**

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">ALC_DVS.2</a>	No dependencies	

Requirements	CC Dependencies	Satisfied Dependencies
<a href="#">AVA VAN.5</a>	(ADV_ARC.1) and (ADV_FSP.4) and (ADV_IMP.1) and (ADV_TDS.3) and (AGD_OPE.1) and (AGD_PRE.1) and (ATE_DPT.1)	<a href="#">ADV_ARC.1</a> , <a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a> , <a href="#">ADV_IMP.1</a> , <a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a> , <a href="#">AGD_OPE.1</a> , <a href="#">AGD_PRE.1</a> , <a href="#">ATE_DPT.1</a>
<a href="#">ADV_ARC.1</a>	(ADV_FSP.1) and (ADV_TDS.1)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a> , <a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a>
<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a>	(ADV_TDS.1)	<a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a>
<a href="#">ADV_IMP.1</a>	(ADV_TDS.3) and (ALC_TAT.1)	<a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a> , <a href="#">ALC_TAT.1</a>
<a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a>	(ADV_FSP.4)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a>
<a href="#">AGD_OPE.1</a>	(ADV_FSP.1)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a>
<a href="#">AGD_PRE.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ALC_CMC.4</a>	(ALC_CMS.1) and (ALC_DVS.1) and (ALC_LCD.1)	<a href="#">ALC_DVS.2</a> , <a href="#">ALC_CMS.4</a> , <a href="#">ALC_LCD.1</a>
<a href="#">ALC_CMS.4</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ALC_DEL.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ALC_LCD.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ALC_TAT.1</a>	(ADV_IMP.1)	<a href="#">ADV_IMP.1</a>
<a href="#">ASE_CCL.1</a>	(ASE_ECD.1) and (ASE_INT.1) and (ASE_REQ.1)	<a href="#">ASE_ECD.1</a> , <a href="#">ASE_INT.1</a> , <a href="#">ASE_REQ.2</a>
<a href="#">ASE_ECD.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ASE_INT.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ASE_OBJ.2</a>	(ASE_SPD.1)	<a href="#">ASE_SPD.1</a>
<a href="#">ASE_REQ.2</a>	(ASE_ECD.1) and (ASE_OBJ.2)	<a href="#">ASE_ECD.1</a> , <a href="#">ASE_OBJ.2</a>
<a href="#">ASE_SPD.1</a>	No dependencies	
<a href="#">ASE_TSS.1</a>	(ADV_FSP.1) and (ASE_INT.1) and (ASE_REQ.1)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a> , <a href="#">ASE_INT.1</a> , <a href="#">ASE_REQ.2</a>
<a href="#">ATE_COV.2</a>	(ADV_FSP.2) and (ATE_FUN.1)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a> , <a href="#">ATE_FUN.1</a>
<a href="#">ATE_DPT.1</a>	(ADV_ARC.1) and (ADV_TDS.2) and (ATE_FUN.1)	<a href="#">ADV_ARC.1</a> , <a href="#">ADV_TDS.3</a> , <a href="#">ATE_FUN.1</a>
<a href="#">ATE_FUN.1</a>	(ATE_COV.1)	<a href="#">ATE_COV.2</a>
<a href="#">ATE_IND.2</a>	(ADV_FSP.2) and (AGD_OPE.1) and (AGD_PRE.1) and (ATE_COV.1) and (ATE_FUN.1)	<a href="#">ADV_FSP.4</a> , <a href="#">AGD_OPE.1</a> , <a href="#">AGD_PRE.1</a> , <a href="#">ATE_COV.2</a> , <a href="#">ATE_FUN.1</a>

**Table 17 SARs dependencies**



	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b>
			<small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>	
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### **6.3.4 Rationale for the Security Assurance Requirements**


Addition of ALC\_DVS.2 and AVA\_VAN.5 for compliance with PP USIM.

### **6.3.5 ALC\_DVS.2 Sufficiency of security measures**

Development security is concerned with physical, procedural, personnel and other technical measures that may be used in the development environment to protect the TOE and the embedding product. The standard ALC\_DVS.1 requirement mandated by EAL4 is not enough. Due to the nature of the TOE and embedding product, it is necessary to justify the sufficiency of these procedures to protect their confidentiality and integrity. ALC\_DVS.2 has no dependencies.

### **6.3.6 AVA\_VAN.5 Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis**

The TOE is intended to operate in hostile environments. AVA\_VAN.5 "Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis" is considered as the expected level for Java Card technology-based products hosting sensitive applications, in particular in payment and identity areas. AVA\_VAN.5 has dependencies on ADV\_ARC.1, ADV\_FSP.1, ADV\_TDS.3, ADV\_IMP.1, AGD\_PRE.1 and AGD\_OPE.1. All of them are satisfied by EAL4.

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 7 TOE Summary Specification

---

### 7.1 TOE Summary Specification

#### 7.1.1 Basic TOE

##### 7.1.1.1 GP

#### **GP.CardContentManagement**

This security function provides the capability and a dedicated flow control for the loading, installation, extradition, registry update, selection and removal of card content and especially executable files and application instances.

Such features are offered to the Card Issuer and its business partners, allowing the Card Issuer to delegate card content management to an Application Provider according to privileges assigned to the various security domains on the card.

It supports delegated management and it can use DAP or Mandated DAP verification and generation of Reception token.

It also checks that only the card management commands specified and allowed at each state of the smart card's life cycle are accepted, and ill-formed ones are rejected with an appropriate error response.

#### **GP.SecurityDomain**

This security function provides security domain management: as SD creation, SD selection, SD privileges setting, SD deletion in SD hierarchy. It provides means to associate or extradite an application to a security domain in order to provide services (as secure channel) to the dedicated application without sharing the related keys stored in SD. It also provides Keyset Management in SD, with Key Set creation, Key set deletion, key importation, replacement, or deletion in Key Set.

Security Domains are privileged Applications as defined in [GP2.2.2 § 7], holding cryptographic keys to be used to support Secure Channel Protocol operations and/or to authorize card content management functions. There are different types of security domain with dedicated privileges and associated operations: ISD Security domain, Supplementary Security domains, and Controlling Authority Security domains.

ISD Security domain as defined in [GP2.2.2 §7.1], is the mandatory Security Domain, implicitly selected if the Application implicitly selectable on the same logical channel of the same card I/O interface is removed. It inherits of the Final Application privilege if the Application with that privilege is removed.

Supplementary Security Domains are privileged Applications with dedicated privileges:

- Token Verification Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.1]


- Delegated Management Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.3]

- Global Delete Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.4]

- Global Lock Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.5]

- Receipt Generation Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.6]

Controlling Authority Security Domain is a supplementary Security Domain dedicated to the Controlling Authority with dedicated privileges. It contains Security Domains

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

cryptographic keys needed to confidentially personalize an initial set of Secure Channel Keys of an APSD.

### **GP.SCP**

This security function manages Secure Channel protocol according to [GP221] annex D,E and [GP22-A] and [TS 102.225].

### **GP.CASD**

This security function manages supplementary Controlling Authority Security Domain with associated functions to confidential Card Content Management as defined in [GP22-A].

### **GP.VASD**

This security function manages supplementary Verification Authority Security Domain with associated functions to mandated DAP as defined in [GP22 §9.2].

### **GP.ISD**

This security function manages the Issuer Security Domain with associated functions and dedicated privileges as defined in [GP2.2.2 §7.1].

### **GP.SecureChannel**

This security function provides a secure communication channel between a card and an off-card entity during an Application Session. It provides an APDU flow control using the Command security level check according to Card Life cycle and type of APDU.

A Secure Channel Session is divided into three sequential phases:

Secure Channel Initiation when the on-card Application and the off-card entity have exchanged sufficient information enabling them to perform the required cryptographic functions. The Secure Channel Session initiation always includes (at least) the authentication of the off-card entity by the on-card Application; performing also the setting of the Command security level used for the session.


Secure Channel Operation when the on-card Application and the off-card entity exchange data within the cryptographic protection of the Secure Channel Session. The Secure Channel services offered may vary from one Secure Channel Protocol to the other;

Secure Channel Termination when either the on-card Application or the off-card entity determines that no further communication is required or allowed via an established Secure Channel Session.

The following services are provided by the Secure Channel as defined in [GP section 4.3.2 and §10- Secure Communication] using SCP 01 or SCP 02 or SCP 80.

Entity authentication in which the card or the off-card entity proves its authenticity to the other entity through a cryptographic exchange, based on session key generation and a dedicated flow control; For SCP80, envelope APDU shall contain secured packet structure defined in [ETSI 102.225 §5] and Anti-replay mechanism is proposed optionally using a counter defined in [ETSI 102.225 §5.1.4]

Integrity and authentication in which the receiving entity (the card or off-card entity) ensures that the data being received from the sending entity (respectively the off-

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

card entity or card) actually came from an authenticated entity in the correct sequence and has not been altered;

Confidentiality in which data being transmitted from the sending entity (the off-card entity or card) to the receiving entity (respectively the card or off-card entity) is not viewable by an unauthenticated entity.

### **GP.GPRegistry**

This security function provides accesses to the GlobalPlatform Registry used for:

- Store card management information;
- Store relevant application management information (e.g., AID, associated Security Domain and Privileges);
- Support card resource management data;
- Store Application Life Cycle information;
- Store card Life Cycle information;
- Track any counters associated with logs.

The contents of the GlobalPlatform Registry may be accessed by administrative commands or by applet using a dedicated GP\_API.

### **GP.SSD**

This security function manages supplementary Security Domains with associated functions and dedicated privileges as defined in [GP22 §9.1].

*Application note:*

Token Verification Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.1] Authorized Management Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.2] Delegated Management Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.3] Global Delete Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.4] Global Lock Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.5] Receipt Generation Privilege as described in [GP22 §9.1.3.6]

#### **7.1.1.2 JCS**

This section defines the security functions to be achieved by the JCS part of the TOE.

#### **JCS.APDUBuffer**


The security function maintains a byte array buffer accessible from any applet context. This buffer is used to transfer incoming APDU header and data bytes as well as outgoing data according to [JCAPI]. The APDU class API is designed to be transport protocol independent T=0, T=1, T=CL (as defined in ISO 7816-3).

*Application note:*

ADPU buffer is a JCRE temporary entry point object where no associated reference can be stored in a variable or an array component.

#### **JCS.ByteCodeExecution**

This security function realizes applet bytecode execution according to JCVM rules [JCVM]. The JCVM execution may be summarized in JCVM interpreter start-up, bytecode execution and JCVM interpreter loop. The applet bytecode execution consists in:

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

fetching the next bytecode to execute according to the applet's code flow control,  
decoding the next bytecode,  
executing the fetched bytecode.

The JVM manages 5 types of objects: persistent objects, transient objects, persistent arrays (boolean, byte, short, int or reference), transient arrays (boolean, byte, short, int or reference) and static field images. For each type of object, different types of control are performed [see JVM §4].

### JCS.Crypto

The security function offers the following services to applets thanks to JavaCard API:

- Generation of random number as defined in [JCAPI] and conformant to ANSSI standard to be used for key values or challenges during external exchanges,
- Computation of checksum CRC16 and CRC32 conformant with ISO3309,
- Ciphering and deciphering operation using DES algorithm in ECB and CBC mode with padding scheme (NOPAD, ISO9797 or PKCS #5),
- Ciphering and deciphering operation using AES (128 bits) algorithm in ECB and CBC mode with padding scheme (NOPAD),
- Ciphering and deciphering operation using RSA with CRT algorithm in mode ISO14888, with padding scheme (ISO9796 or PKCS #1),
- Data Hash operation for message digests using SHA-2 algorithm (SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-224),
- Generation of an signature of a byte array, and verifying an signature stored in a byte array using a generation of 20-byte SHA-2 message digest using RSA algorithm with PKCS#1-PSS padding scheme,
- Generation of 4-byte or 8-byte MAC using DES (112 or 168 bits key) algorithm according to ISO9797-1,
- Generation of 16-byte MAC using AES algorithm in CBC mode (MAC\_128) with padding scheme (NOPAD).

These operations are performed in a way to avoid revealing the key values. If the applet specifies an algorithm that the platform does not support, the JCRE refuses to perform the cryptographic operation and generates an exception. Even if [JCAPI] specifies some other algorithms or parameters for cryptographic operations, the use of these other values are not advised; and clearly out of scope of the TOE. See [USR] for details.


### JCS.EraseResidualData

The security function ensures that sensitive data are locked upon the following operations as defined in [JCRE301]:

- Deletion of package and/or applications,
- Deletion of objects.

There are erased when space needs to be reused for allocation of new object.

This security function also ensures that the sensitive temporary buffers (transient object, bArray object, APDU buffer, Cryptographic buffer) are securely cleared after their usage with respect to their life-cycle and interface as defined in [JCRE301], transient object at reset or allocation and persistent object are erased at allocation for new object.

	<b>Reference</b>	<b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b>	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b>	<b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b>	<b>177</b>

### JCS.Exception

This security function manages throwing of an instance of Exception class in the following cases:

- a SecurityException when an illegal access to an object is detected,
- a SystemException with an error code describing the error condition,
- a RemoteException when a communication-related exception has occurred during the execution of a remote method call,
- a CryptoException in case of algorithm error or illegal use,
- any exception decided by the applet or the JCRE handled as temporary JCRE entry point object with associated JC API. It also offers a means to applet to handle exception and to JCRE to handle uncaught exception by applets.

### JCS.Firewall

This security function enforces the Firewall access control policy and the JVM information flow control policy at runtime. It defines how accessing the following items: Static Class Fields, Array Objects, Class Instance Object Fields, Class Instance Object Methods, Standard Interface Methods, Shareable Interface Methods, Classes, Standard Interfaces, Shareable Interfaces, Array Object Methods.

Based on security attributes [Sharing, Context, Lifetime], it performs access control to object fields between objects and throws security exception when access is denied. Thus, it enforces applet isolation located in different packages and controls the access to global data containers shared by all applet instances.

The JCRE shall allocate and manage a context for each Java API package containing applets. The JCRE maintains its own context a special system privileges so that it can perform operations that are denied to contexts of applets.

### JCS.KeyManagement

This security function enforces key management for the different associated operations: key building, key agreement, key generation, key importation, key exportation, key masking, key destruction using standard API defined in [JCAPI].

Key generation support generation of RSA key pairs using a secure random number generator compliant with ANSSI's Standard security level for cryptography operations.

Key agreement enables an applet to agree on a shared secret with the external, with a method conformant to [JCAPI]. It is built to avoid disclosure of this secret to third parties observing exchange done for key agreement.


Key masking protects the confidentiality of cryptographic keys from being read out from the memory. It ensures the service of accessing and modifying them.

Key destruction disables the use of a key both logically and physically. Reuse is only possible after erase.

Key importation and exportation is done using method protecting confidentiality and integrity of key.

### JCS.OutOfLifeDataUndisclosure

This security function ensures that sensitive data are locked until postponed erasure on the following operations:

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

Deletion of persistent and transient objects according to [JCRE301].

### **JCS.OwnerPIN**

This security function supplies to applet a mean to assume a user identification and authentication with the OwnerPin class conformant to [JCAPI].

It offers to create a PIN and store it securely in the persistent memory. It allow access to PIN value only to perform a secure comparison between a PIN stored in the persistent memory and a data received as parameter.

A method returns a positive result if a valid Pin has been presented during current session. If the PIN is not blocked and the comparison is successful, the validated flag is set to and the try counter is set to its maximum, otherwise the authentication fails and the associated try counter is decremented. When the validated flas is set, it is assumed that the user is authenticated.

When the try counter reaches zero, the PIN is blocked and the authentication is no more possible until the PIN is unblocked.

### **JCS.Package**

Thsi security functions manages packages. Package is a structural item defined for naming, loading, storing, execution context definition. There are rules for identification of package, for structure check and access rules definition. If inconsistent items are found during checks, an error message is sent.

### **JCS.RMI**

This security function enforces the RMI access control policy and the RMI information flow control policy between CAD and Remote Object located in card using dedicated security attributes and their management as defined in [JCRE].

The Java Card RMI message is encapsulated within the APDU object passed into the RMIService methods. RMIService class implements the Java Card RMI protocol and processes the RMI access commands

### **JCS.RNG**


This security function provides random value using a given algorithm with or without a seed as defined in [JCAPI].

### **JCS.RunTimeExecution**

This security function provides a secure run time environment and deals with:

- Instance registration or deletion,
- Application selection,
- Applet opcode execution,
- JCS API methods execution,
- Logical channel management,
- APDU flow control, dispatch and buffer management,
- JCRE memory and context management,
- JCRE reference deletion,
- JCRE access rights,



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

JCRE throw exception,  
JCRE security reaction.

### 7.1.1.3 SecureAPI

#### **SA.FlowControl**

The security function provides means to application to control execution flow, to detect any failure and to react if required.

#### **SA.SecureOperation**

The security function provides means to application to execute securely data transfer and comparison, to detect any failure during operation and to react if required.

#### **SA.RandomDelay**

The security function provides means to introduce dummy operations leading to unobservability of sensitive operation.

### 7.1.1.4 EMVUtil\_API

#### **EUA.SecureContainer**

The security function provides means to application to perform read/write operations on dedicated secure container and to check the integrity of the data stored in it.

#### **EUA.SecureCounter**

The security function provides means to application to manage securely operations associated to counter object and to check its integrity.

### 7.1.1.5 GemActivate

#### **GA.OptionalServiceActivation**

Activation is only possible for deactivated services defined in registry. Activation is done by changing internal state of optional platform service: cryptographic algorithm, package, applet instance, scalability (extension of available NVM) and NFC interface (SWP, HCI gate). The command is available only for GemActivate under control of GemActivate Administrator. GemActivate is accessible only using a secure channel under control of MNO.

#### **GA.ServiceAudit**


The application allow MNO or GemActivate administrator audit of actual state (deactivated, activated, inhibited) of each optional platform service described in platform registry.

#### **GA.GemActivateActivation**

The application can be activated by GemActivate Administrator only if the following conditions are fulfilled:

if activation command is consistent,



	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

if ratification counter limit is not reached,  
if anti replay verification has not failed,  
if activation signature verification has not failed.

The application allows activation of the following optional services: Standard or private cryptographic algorithms, optional packages, inactivated applets loaded in Pre-issuance, optional NFC gate, available user memory size in NVM.

#### 7.1.1.6 OS

This section defines the security functions to be achieved by the OS part of the TOE.

##### **OS.Atomicity**

The security function performs write operations atomically on complex type or object in order to avoid incomplete update. Prior to be written, the data are stored in an atomic back-up area. In case on writing interrupt, the only two possible values are: initial value if writing is not started or final value if writing is started. At next start-up, the atomic back-up area is check to finalize interrupted writing.

##### **OS.Memory Management**

The security function allocates memory areas and performs access control to memory areas to avoid unauthorized access. It manages circular writing to avoid instable memory state. It assumes memory recovery in case of error detection. It offers (when required) confidentiality services for data storage: Ciphering / Deciphering of Data in RAM or in FLASH, Scrambling / Unscrambling of Data in RAM or in FLASH.

#### 7.1.1.7 IC

##### **IC.Limited FaultTolerance**

The TSF manages a certain number of faults or errors that may happen, related to memory content, CPU, Random generation and cryptographic operation, thus preventing risk of malfunction. It is related to FRU\_FLT.2 from [ST/IC].

##### **IC.Secure State**


The TSF provides preservation of secure state managing security violation resulting in an immediate reset. It is related to FPT\_FLS.1 from [ST/IC].

##### **IC.LIM.Capability (TEST)**

The TSF ensures that test capability is unavailable in USER configuration. It is related to FMT\_LIM.1 [TEST] from [ST/IC].

##### **IC.LIM.Capability (ISSUER)**

The TSF ensures that secure flash loader and test capability are unavailable in USER configuration. It is related to FMT\_LIM.1 [ISSUER] from [ST/IC].

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

### IC.ModeControl

The TSF ensures that only defined modes are available: TEST, ISSUER, USER configuration. It is related to FMT\_LIM.2 [TEST] & ISSUER] from [ST/IC].

### IC.Audit Storage

The TSF provides command to store data for audit purpose using commands only available to authorized process. It is related to FAU\_SAS.1 from [ST/IC]. IC\_Audit\_Storage is used for TOE identification in phase 3 & 4.

### IC.Resistance to Physical Attack

The TSF ensures resistance to physical tampering using features against probing and an active shield detecting integrity violation. It is related to FPT\_PHP.3 from [ST/IC].

### IC.Internal Data Transfer Protection

The TSF prevents disclosure of internal and user data thanks to memory scrambling and encryption, bus encryption... It is related to FDP\_ITT.1, FPT\_ITT.1, FDP\_IFC.1 from [ST/IC].

### IC.Random Number Generation

The TSF produces AIS31-qualified random numbers that can be directly used in embedded software. It is related to FCS\_RNG.1 from [ST/IC].

### IC.Cryptoaccelerator

The TSF provides EDES accelerator to perform DES and TDES encryption and decryption conformant to FIPS PUB 46-3.

The TSF provides arithmetic primitives to be used in more complex computation as RSA signature in software cryptographic library.

It is related to FCS\_COP.1 from [ST/IC].

It also uses RNG, arithmetic primitives of Nescrypt. But there is no usage of NesLib.

### IC.Memory Protection


The TSF enforces a default memory protection policy when none other is programmed by the embedded software. It is related to FMT\_MSA.3 from [ST/IC].

### IC.MPU

The TSF provides a dynamic Memory protection unit (MPU) that can be configured by the ES. It is related to FMT\_MSA.1, FMT\_SMF.1 from [ST/IC].

### IC.Loading Access Control

The TSF provides an access control to loading. The Standard Loader instructions and/or Advanced Loader instructions can be executed only if valid passwords have been presented. It is related to FDP\_ACC.2, FDP\_ACF.1 from [ST/IC].

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>


## 7.2 SFRs and TSS

### 7.2.1 SFRs and TSS – Rationale

[Chapter content has been removed in Public version.](#)

### 7.2.2 Association tables of SFRs and TSS


[Chapter content has been removed in Public version.](#)

	<b>Reference</b> <b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b> <b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b> <b>177</b>

## 8 Notice

---


This document has been generated with TL SET version 2.3.7 (for CC3). For more information about the security editor tool of Trusted Labs visit our website at [www.trusted-labs.com](http://www.trusted-labs.com).

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>


## 9 References, Glossary and Abbreviations

### 9.1 External References

Reference	Title
[CC-1]	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation Part 1: Introduction and general model CCIMB-2009-07-001, version 3.1 Release 3, July 2009.
[CC-2]	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation Part 2: Security Functional Requirements CCIMB-2009-07-002, version 3.1 Release 3, July 2009.
[CC-3]	Common Criteria for Information Technology security Evaluation Part 3: Security Assurance Requirements CCIMB-2009-07-003, version 3.1 Release 3, July 2009.
[CEM]	Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation CCIMB-2009-07-004, version 3.1 Release 3, July 2009.
[Comp]	CCDB, Composite product evaluation for Smart Cards and similar devices, September 2007, Version 1.0 - Revision 1, September 2007, CCDB-2007-09-001
[DCSSI2741]	Règles et recommandations concernant le choix et le dimensionnement des mécanismes cryptographiques de niveau de robustesse standard N° 2741/SGDN/DCSSI/SDS/LCR Version 1.10
[FIPS 46-3]	FIPS 46-3: DES Data Encryption Standard (DES and TDES). National Institute of Standards and Technology
[FIPS 197]	FIPS 197: AES Advanced Encryption Standard. National Institute of Standards and Technology.
[FIPS 180-2]	FIPS-46-3: Secure Hash Standard (SHA). National Institute of Standards and Technology.
[GP221]	Global Platform 2.2.2, Specification GP
[GP-CCCM]	GlobalPlatform, Card Confidential Card Content Management, Card specification v2.2 – Amendment A,
[GP-UICC]	GlobalPlatform Card UICC Configuration Version 1.0.1
[ISO 7816-4]	Identification cards - Integrated circuit(s) cards with contacts, Part 4: Interindustry commands for interchange.
[ISO 7816-6]	Identification cards - Integrated circuit(s) cards with contacts, Part 6: Interindustry data elements.
[ISO 7816-9]	Identification cards - Integrated circuit(s) cards with contacts, Part 9: Additional Inter industry commands and security attributes.
[ISO 9796-2]	ISO/IEC 9796-2 Information technology -- Security techniques -- Digital signature schemes giving message recovery -- Part 2: Integer factorization based mechanisms
[JCAPI222]	Java Card™ APIs specification version 2.2.2, Sun Microsystems, Inc, March 2006.
[JCRE222]	Java Card™ Runtime Environment Specification version 2.2.2, Sun Microsystems, Inc, March 2006
[JCV222]	Java Card 2.2.2 Virtual Machine Specification, Sun Microsystems, March 2006
[JCRE301]	Runtime Environment Specification Java Card™ Platform, Version 3.0.1, Classic Edition, May 2009
[JCV301]	Virtual Machine Specification Java Card™ Platform, Version 3.0.1, Classic Edition, May 2009


	<b>Reference</b>	<b>D1255596</b>	<b>Release</b>	<b>1.2p</b>
			<small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>	
	<b>Classification level</b>	<b>Public</b>	<b>Pages</b>	<b>177</b>

Reference	Title
[JIL]	Joint Interpretation Library Composite product evaluation for Smart Cards and similar devices Version 1.0 September 2007
[PP-BSI-0035]	Security IC Platform Protection Profile Version 1.0 15.06.2007
[PP-JCS]	Java Card™ System Protection Profile “Open Configuration” Version 2.6
[PP-USIM]	(U)SIM Java Card Platform Protection Profile Basic Configuration V2.0.2, June 2010
[PP-USIMb]	(U)SIM Java Card Platform Protection Profile in SCWS Configuration V2.0.2, June 2010
[PP-SSCD]	Protection profiles for Secure signature creation device — Part 2: Device with key generation
[RFC2085]	HMAC-MD5 IP Authentication with Replay Prevention
[RFC2104]	HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication
[RSA PKCS#1]	PKCS #1 v2.1: RSA Cryptography Standard
[ST/IC]	Security Target of ST33F1M SMD_ST33F1M_ST_10_001 Rev 01.00
[STM_SG]	ST33F1M Security Guidance
[TS03.19]	ETSI 3GPP TS 03.19, Subscriber Identity Module Application Programming Interface (SIM API) for Java Card™; Stage 2
[TS 51.011]	ETSI 3GPP TS 51.011, 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface (Release 4)
[TS 51.013]	ETSI 3GPP TS 51.013, 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Terminals; Test specification for SIM API for Java Card™ (Release 4)
[TS 51.014]	ETSI 3GPP TS 51.014, 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; Specification of the SIM Application Toolkit for the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface (Release 4)
[TS 102.221]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.221, Smart cards; UICC-Terminal interface; Physical and logical characteristics (Release 6)
[TS 102.222]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.222, Integrated Circuit Cards (ICC); Administrative commands for telecommunications applications (Release 6) – v 6.0.0 (2003-02).
[TS 102.223]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.223, Smart Cards; Card Application Toolkit (CAT) (Release 6)
[TS 102.224]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.224, Smart cards; Security mechanisms for UICC based Applications - Functional requirements (Release 6)
[TS 102.225]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.225, Smart cards; Secured packet structure for UICC based applications (Release 6) –
[TS 102.226]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.226, Smart Cards; Remote APDU structure for UICC based applications (Release 6)
[TS 102.240]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.240, Smart Cards; UICC Application Programming Interface and Loader Requirements; Service description; (Release 6)
[TS 102.241]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.241, UICC API, 3GPP Release 6
[TS 102.613]	ETSI 3GPP TS 102.613, UICC - Contactless Front-end (CLF) Interface; Part 1: Physical and data link layer characteristics (Release 7)
[TS131.111]	ETSI 3GPP TS 131.111, Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Application Toolkit (USAT) (Release 6)
[T131.130]	ETSI TS 131.130, Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS); (U)SIM Application Programming Interface (API); (U)SIM API for Java Card (3GPP TS 31.130 version 6.6.0 Release 6)

	Reference	<b>D1255596</b>	Release	<b>1.2p</b> (Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)
	Classification level	<b>Public</b>	Pages	<b>177</b>

## 9.2 Internal References


Reference	Title
[ST_PLF]	Security Target : UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM ST_ D1255596
[FSP_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Functional Specification D1264870 (FSP_D1264870)
[TDS_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform TOE Design Specification D1264872 (TDS_ D1264872)
[ARC_PLF]	PHENIX Platform TOE Security Architecture D1145954 (ARC_D1145954)
[IMP_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Implementation representation D1264873 (IMP_ D1264873)
[PRE_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Preparation Guidance D1263509 (PRE_ D1263509)
[OPE_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Operational Guidance D1263600 (OPE_ ANNEX_ D1263600)
[COV_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Analysis of test coverage D1264874 (COV_ D1264874)
[DPT_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Analysis of the depth of testing D1264875 (DPT_ D1264875)
[FUN_PLF]	UpTeq NFC 2.0.4_OFM Platform Functional Test Documentation D1264876 (FUN_ D1264876)
[CMC_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Configuration Management Plan D1145963 (CMC_D1145963)
[CMS_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Configuration Management Scope D1145965 (CMS_ D1145965)
[LCD_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Life cycle Support D1145997 (LCD_ D1145997)
[FLR_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Problem tracking Plan D1145968 (PTP_ D1145968) PHENIX Platform Problem Flaw Remediation Plan D1145970 (FLR_ D1145970)
[DVS_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Development Security Documentation D1145975 (DVS_ D1145975)
[DEL_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Delivery Documentation D1145978 (DEL_ D1145978)
[TAT_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Documentation of development tools D1145971 (TAT_ D1145971)
[COMP_PLF]	PHENIX Platform Composition with Hardware D1145972 (COM_ D1145972)

	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

### 9.3 Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Description
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AID	Applet Identifier
APDU	Application Protocol Data Unit
API	Application Programmer Interface
CBC	Cipher Block Chaining
CC	Common Criteria
CM	Card Manager
CPLC	Card Production Life Cycle
DAP	Data Authentication Pattern
DES	Data Encryption Standard
DS	Dedicated Software
EAL	Evaluation Assurance Level
GP	Global Platform
HMAC	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code
IC	Integrated Circuit
JCRE	Java Card Runtime Environment
JCS	Java Card System
JCVM	Java Card Virtual Machine
MAC	Message Authentication Code
OSP	Organizational Security Policy
PP	Protection Profile
RNG	Random Number Generation
RSA	Cryptographic module "Rivest, Shamir, Adleman"
SHA-2	Cryptographic module "Secure hash standard"
ST	Security Target
TOE	Target of Evaluation.



	<b>Reference</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>D1255596</b></span>	<b>Release</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>1.2p</b></span> <small>(Printed copy not controlled: verify the version before using)</small>
	<b>Classification level</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>Public</b></span>	<b>Pages</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>177</b></span>

## 9.4 Glossary

Term	Definition
Application	Instance of an Executable Module after it has been installed and made selectable
APDU	Standard communication messaging protocol between a card accepting device and a smart card
Card Administrator	The card administrator is an external entity issuing the card and performing main functions of card administration (as Card life cycle Management). It is usually the Card Issuer or MNO.
Controlling Authority	A Controlling Authority is entity independent from the MNO represented on the (U)SIM card and responsible for securing the keys creation and personalization of the Supplementary Security Domains.
DAP Block	Part of the Load File used for ensuring Load File Data Block verification
DAP Verification	A mechanism used by a Security Domain to verify that a Load File Data Block is authentic
Delegated Management	Pre-authorized Card Content changes performed by an approved Application Provider
Executable Load File	Actual on-card container of one or more application's executable code. It may reside in Immutable Persistent Memory or may be created in Mutable Persistent Memory as the resulting image of a Load File Data Block.
Executable Module	Contains the on-card executable code of a single application present within an Executable Load File
Issuer Security Domain	The primary on-card entity providing support for the control, security, and communication requirements of the card administrator (typically the Card Issuer or MNO)
Load File	A file transferred to a GlobalPlatform card that contains a Load File Data Block and possibly one or more DAP Blocks
Load File Data Block	Part of the Load File that contains one or more application(s) or libraries and support information for the application(s) as required by the specific platform
Load File Data Block Hash	A value providing integrity for the Load File Data Block
Message Authentication Code	A symmetric cryptographic transformation of data that provides data origin authentication and data integrity
Secure Channel	A communication mechanism between an off-card entity and a card that provides a level of assurance, to one or both entities
Secure Channel Protocol	A secure communication protocol and set of security services
Security Domain	On-card entity providing support for the control, security, and communication requirements of an off-card entity (e.g. the Card Issuer, an Application Provider or a Controlling Authority)
Supplementary Security Domain	A Security Domain other than the Issuer Security Domain dedicated to Application provider.
Token	A cryptographic value provided by a Card Issuer as proof that a Delegated Management operation has been authorized
Verification Authority	The Verification Authority (VA), is a trusted third party represented on the (U)SIM card, acting on behalf of the MNO and responsible for the verification of application signatures (mandated DAP) during the loading process.